

Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 December 2006 laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels and repealing Council Directive 82/714/EEC (2006/87/EC) (repealed)

DIRECTIVE OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL

of 12 December 2006

laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels and repealing Council Directive 82/714/EEC

(2006/87/EC) (repealed)

THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND THE COUNCIL OF THE EUROPEAN UNION,

Having regard to the Treaty establishing the European Community, and in particular Article 71(1) thereof,

Having regard to the proposal from the Commission,

Having regard to the opinion of the European Economic and Social Committee⁽¹⁾,

Following consultation of the Committee of the Regions,

Acting in accordance with the procedure laid down in Article 251 of the Treaty⁽²⁾,

Whereas:

- (1) Council Directive 82/714/EEC of 4 October 1982 laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels⁽³⁾ introduced harmonised conditions for issuing technical certificates for inland waterway vessels in all Member States, albeit excluding operations on the Rhine. Nevertheless, at European level, various technical requirements for inland waterway vessels have remained in force. Up to now, the coexistence of various international and national regulations has obstructed efforts to ensure mutual recognition of national navigation certificates without the need for an additional inspection of foreign vessels. Furthermore, the standards contained in Directive 82/714/EEC, in part, no longer reflect current technological developments.
- (2) Essentially, the technical requirements set out in the annexes to Directive 82/714/EEC incorporate the provisions laid down in the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation, in the version approved by the Central Commission for Navigation on the Rhine (CCNR) in 1982. The conditions and technical requirements for issuing inland navigation certificates under Article 22 of the Revised Convention for Rhine Navigation have been revised regularly since then and are recognised as reflecting current technological developments. For competition and safety reasons it is desirable, specifically in the interests of promoting harmonisation at European level, to adopt the scope and content of such technical requirements for the whole of the Community's inland waterway network. Account should be taken in this regard of the changes that have occurred in that network.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- (3) Community inland navigation certificates attesting the full compliance of vessels with the aforementioned revised technical requirements should be valid on all Community inland waterways.
- (4) It is desirable to ensure a greater degree of harmonisation between the conditions for the issuing of supplementary Community inland navigation certificates by Member States for operations on Zone 1 and 2 waterways (estuaries), as well as for operations on Zone 4 waterways.
- (5) In the interests of passenger transport safety, it is desirable that the scope of Directive 82/714/EEC be extended to include passenger vessels designed to carry more than 12 passengers, along the lines of the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation.
- (6) In the interests of safety, harmonisation of standards should be at a high level and should be achieved in such a way so as not to result in any reduction in safety standards on any Community inland waterway.
- (7) It is appropriate to provide for a transitional regime for vessels in service not yet carrying a Community inland navigation certificate when subjected to a first technical inspection under the revised technical requirements established by this Directive.
- (8) It is appropriate, within certain limits and according to the category of vessel concerned, to determine the period of validity of Community inland navigation certificates in each specific case.
- (9) The measures necessary for the implementation of this Directive should be adopted in accordance with Council Decision 1999/468/EC of 28 June 1999 laying down the procedures for the exercise of implementing powers conferred on the Commission⁽⁴⁾.
- (10) It is necessary that the measures provided for in Council Directive 76/135/EEC of 20 January 1976 on reciprocal recognition of navigability licenses for inland waterway vessels⁽⁵⁾ remain in force for those vessels not covered by this Directive.
- (11) Given that some vessels fall within the scope of Directive 94/25/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 June 1994 on the approximation of the laws, regulations and administrative provisions of the Member States relating to recreational craft⁽⁶⁾ as well as of this Directive, the annexes of the two Directives should be adjusted by the relevant committee procedures as soon as possible if there are any contradictions or inconsistencies between the provisions of those Directives.
- (12) In accordance with point 34 of the Interinstitutional Agreement on better law-making⁽⁷⁾, Member States are encouraged to draw up, for themselves and in the interests of the Community, their own tables illustrating, as far as possible, the correlation between this Directive and the transposition measures, and to make them public.
- (13) Directive 82/714/EEC should be repealed,

HAVE ADOPTED THIS DIRECTIVE:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 1

Classification of waterways

1 For the purposes of this Directive, Community inland waterways shall be classified as follows:

- a Zones 1, 2, 3 and 4:
 - (i) Zones 1 and 2: the waterways listed in Chapter 1 of Annex I;
 - (ii) Zone 3: the waterways listed in Chapter 2 of Annex I;
 - (iii) Zone 4: the waterways listed in Chapter 3 of Annex I.
- b Zone R: those of the waterways referred to in point (a) for which certificates are to be issued in accordance with Article 22 of the Revised Convention for Rhine Navigation as that Article is worded when this Directive enters into force.

2 Any Member State may, after consulting the Commission, modify the classification of its waterways into the zones listed in Annex I. The Commission shall be notified of these modifications at least six months before their entry into force and shall inform the other Member States.

Article 2

Scope of application

1 This Directive shall, in accordance with Article 1.01 of Annex II, apply to the following craft:

- a vessels having a length (L) of 20 metres or more;
- b vessels for which the product of length (L), breadth (B) and draught (T) is a volume of 100 m³ or more.

2 This Directive shall also apply, in accordance with Article 1.01 of Annex II, to all of the following craft:

- a tugs and pushers intended for towing or pushing craft referred to in paragraph 1 or floating equipment or for moving such craft or floating equipment alongside;
- b vessels intended for passenger transport which carry more than 12 passengers in addition to the crew;
- c floating equipment.

3 The following craft shall be excluded from this Directive:

- a ferries;
- b naval vessels;
- c sea-going vessels, including sea-going tugs and pusher craft, which:
 - (i) operate or are based on tidal waters;
 - (ii) operate temporarily on inland waterways, provided that they carry:
 - a certificate proving conformity with the 1974 International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), or equivalent, a certificate proving conformity with the 1966 International Convention on Load Lines, or equivalent, and an international oil

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

pollution prevention (IOPP) certificate proving conformity with the 1973 International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL); or

- in the case of passenger vessels not covered by all of the Conventions referred to in the first indent, a certificate on safety rules and standards for passenger ships issued in conformity with Council Directive 98/18/EC of 17 March 1998 on safety rules and standards for passenger ships⁽⁸⁾; or
- in the case of recreational craft not covered by all of the Conventions referred to in the first indent, a certificate of the country of which it carries the flag.

Article 3

Obligation to carry a certificate

1 Craft operating on the Community inland waterways referred to in Article 1 shall carry:

- a when operating on a Zone R waterway:
 - either a certificate issued pursuant to Article 22 of the Revised Convention for Rhine Navigation;
 - or a Community inland navigation certificate issued or renewed after 30 December 2008, and attesting full compliance of the craft, without prejudice to the transitional provisions of Chapter 24 of Annex II, with technical requirements as defined in Annex II for which equivalency with the technical requirements laid down in application of the abovementioned Convention has been established according to the applicable rules and procedures;
- b when operating on other waterways, a Community inland navigation certificate, including, where applicable, the specifications referred to in Article 5.

2 The Community inland navigation certificate shall be drawn up following the model set out in Part I of Annex V and shall be issued in accordance with this Directive.

Article 4

Supplementary Community inland navigation certificates

1 All craft carrying a valid certificate issued pursuant to Article 22 of the Revised Convention for Rhine Navigation may, subject to the provisions of Article 5(5) of this Directive, navigate on Community waterways carrying that certificate only.

2 However, all craft carrying the certificate referred to in paragraph 1 shall also be provided with a supplementary Community inland navigation certificate:

- a when operating on Zone 3 and 4 waterways, if they wish to take advantage of the reduction in technical requirements on those waterways;
- b when operating on Zone 1 and 2 waterways, or, in respect of passenger vessels, when operating on Zone 3 waterways that are not linked to the navigable inland waterways of another Member State, if the Member State concerned has adopted additional technical requirements for those waterways, in accordance with Article 5(1), (2) and (3).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

3 The supplementary Community inland navigation certificate shall be drawn up following the model set out in Part II of Annex V and shall be issued by the competent authorities on production of the certificate referred to in paragraph 1 and under the conditions laid down by the authorities competent for the waterways concerned.

Article 5

Additional or reduced technical requirements for certain zones

1 Each Member State may, after consulting the Commission, and where applicable subject to the requirements of the Revised Convention for Rhine Navigation, adopt technical requirements additional to those in Annex II for craft operating on Zone 1 and 2 waterways within its territory.

2 In respect of passenger vessels operating on Zone 3 waterways within its territory that are not linked to the navigable inland waterways of another Member State, each Member State may maintain technical requirements additional to those in Annex II. Amendments to such technical requirements shall require the prior approval of the Commission.

3 The additional requirements shall be restricted to the subjects listed in Annex III. The Commission shall be notified of these additional requirements at least six months before their entry into force and shall inform the other Member States.

4 Compliance with the additional requirements shall be specified in the Community inland navigation certificate referred to in Article 3 or, where Article 4(2) applies, in the supplementary Community inland navigation certificate. Such proof of compliance shall be recognised on Community waterways of the corresponding zone.

5

- a Where application of the transitional provisions set out in Chapter 24a of Annex II would result in a reduction in existing national safety standards, a Member State may disapply those transitional provisions in respect of inland waterway passenger vessels operating on its inland waterways that are not linked to the navigable inland waterways of another Member State. In such circumstances, the Member State may require that such vessels operating on its non-linked inland waterways comply fully with the technical requirements set out in Annex II from 30 December 2008.
- b A Member State exercising the provision in point (a) shall inform the Commission of its decision and provide the Commission with details of the relevant national standards applying to passenger vessels operating on its inland waterways. The Commission shall inform the Member States.
- c Compliance with the requirements of a Member State for operating on its non-linked inland waterways shall be specified in the Community inland navigation certificate referred to in Article 3 or, where Article 4(2) applies, in the supplementary Community inland navigation certificate.

6 Craft operating only on Zone 4 waterways shall qualify for the reduced requirements as specified in Chapter 19b of Annex II on all waterways in that zone. Compliance with those reduced requirements shall be specified in the Community inland navigation certificate referred to in Article 3.

7 Each Member State may, after consulting the Commission, allow a reduction of the technical requirements of Annex II for craft operating exclusively on Zone 3 and 4 waterways within its territory.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Such a reduction shall be restricted to the subjects listed in Annex IV. Where the technical characteristics of a craft correspond to the reduced technical requirements, this shall be specified in the Community inland navigation certificate or, where Article 4(2) applies, in the supplementary Community inland navigation certificate.

The Commission shall be notified of the reductions of the technical requirements of Annex II at least six months before they come into force and shall inform the other Member States.

Article 6

Dangerous goods

Any craft carrying a certificate issued pursuant to the Regulation for the transport of dangerous substances on the Rhine (the 'ADNR') may carry dangerous goods throughout the territory of the Community under the conditions stated in that certificate.

Any Member State may require that craft which do not carry such a certificate shall only be authorised to carry dangerous goods within its territory if the craft comply with requirements additional to those set out in this Directive. The Commission shall be notified of such requirements and shall inform the other Member States.

Article 7

Derogations

- 1 Member States may authorise derogations from all or part of this Directive for:
 - a vessels, tugs, pushers and floating equipment operating on navigable waterways not linked by inland waterway to the waterways of other Member States;
 - b craft having a dead weight not exceeding 350 tonnes or craft not intended for the carriage of goods and having a water displacement of less than 100 m³, which were laid down before 1 January 1950 and operate exclusively on a national waterway.
- 2 Member States may authorise in respect of navigation on their national waterways derogations from one or more provisions of this Directive for limited journeys of local interest or in harbour areas. These derogations and the journeys or area for which they are valid shall be specified in the vessel's certificate.
- 3 The Commission shall be notified of derogations authorised in accordance with paragraphs 1 and 2 and shall inform the other Member States.
- 4 Any Member State which, as a result of derogations authorised in accordance with paragraphs 1 and 2, has no craft subject to the provisions of this Directive operating on its waterways shall not be required to comply with Articles 9, 10 and 12.

Article 8

Issuance of Community inland navigation certificates

- 1 The Community inland navigation certificate shall be issued to craft laid down as from 30 December 2008 following a technical inspection carried out prior to the craft being put into service and intended to check whether the craft complies with the technical requirements laid down in Annex II.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The Community inland navigation certificate shall be issued to craft excluded from the scope of Directive 82/714/EEC, but covered by this Directive in accordance with Article 2(1) and (2), following a technical inspection which shall be carried out upon expiry of the craft's current certificate, but in any case no later than 30 December 2018, to check whether the craft complies with the technical requirements laid down in Annex II. In Member States where the validity period of the craft's current national certificate is shorter than five years, such certificate may be issued until five years after 30 December 2008.

Any failure to meet the technical requirements laid down in Annex II shall be specified in the Community inland navigation certificate. Provided that the competent authorities consider that these shortcomings do not constitute a manifest danger, the craft referred to in the first subparagraph may continue to operate until such time as those components or areas of the craft which have been certified as not meeting those requirements are replaced or altered, whereafter those components or areas shall meet the requirements of Annex II.

3 Manifest danger within the meaning of this Article shall be presumed in particular when requirements concerning the structural soundness of the shipbuilding, the navigation or manoeuvrability or special features of the craft in accordance with Annex II are affected. Derogations as allowed for in Annex II shall not be identified as shortcomings which constitute a manifest danger.

The replacement of existing parts with identical parts or parts of an equivalent technology and design during routine repairs and maintenance shall not be considered as a replacement within the meaning of this Article.

4 Compliance of a craft with the additional requirements referred to in Article 5(1), (2) and (3) shall, where appropriate, be checked during the technical inspections provided for in paragraphs 1 and 2 of this Article, or during a technical inspection carried out at the request of the vessel's owner.

Article 9

Competent authorities

1 Community inland navigation certificates may be issued by the competent authorities of any Member State.

2 Each Member State shall draw up a list indicating which of its authorities are competent for issuing the Community inland navigation certificates and shall notify the Commission thereof. The Commission shall inform the other Member States.

Article 10

Carrying out of technical inspections

1 The technical inspection referred to in Article 8 shall be carried out by the competent authorities which may refrain from subjecting the craft in whole or in part to technical inspection where it is evident from a valid attestation, issued by a recognised classification society in accordance with Article 1.01 of Annex II, that the craft satisfies in whole or in part the technical requirements of Annex II. Classification societies shall only be recognised if they fulfil the criteria listed in Part I of Annex VII.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Each Member State shall draw up a list indicating which of its authorities are competent for carrying out technical inspections and shall notify the Commission thereof. The Commission shall inform the other Member States.

Article 11

Validity of Community inland navigation certificates

1 The period of validity of Community inland navigation certificates shall be determined in each specific case by the authority competent for issuing such certificates in accordance with Annex II.

2 Each Member State may, in the cases specified in Articles 12 and 16 and in Annex II, issue provisional Community inland navigation certificates. Provisional Community inland navigation certificates shall be drawn up following the model set out in Part III of Annex V.

Article 12

Replacement of Community inland navigation certificates

Each Member State shall lay down the conditions under which a valid Community inland navigation certificate which has been lost or damaged may be replaced.

Article 13

Renewal of Community inland navigation certificates

1 The Community inland navigation certificate shall be renewed on expiry of its period of validity in accordance with the conditions laid down in Article 8.

2 For the renewal of Community inland navigation certificates issued before 30 December 2008, the transitional provisions of Annex II shall apply.

3 For the renewal of Community inland navigation certificates issued after 30 December 2008, the transitional provisions of Annex II which have come into force after the issuing of such certificates shall apply.

Article 14

Extension of validity of Community inland navigation certificates

The validity of a Community inland navigation certificate may exceptionally be extended without a technical inspection in accordance with Annex II by the authority which issued or renewed it. Such extension shall be indicated on that certificate.

Article 15

Issuance of new Community inland navigation certificates

In the event of major alterations or repairs which affect the structural soundness of the shipbuilding, the navigation or manoeuvrability or special features of the craft in

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

accordance with Annex II, the latter shall again undergo, prior to any further voyage, the technical inspection provided for in Article 8. Following this inspection, a new Community inland navigation certificate stating the technical characteristics of the craft shall be issued or the existing certificate amended accordingly. If this certificate is issued in a Member State other than that which issued or renewed the initial certificate, the competent authority which issued or renewed the certificate shall be informed accordingly within one month.

Article 16

Refusal to issue or renew, and withdrawal of, Community inland navigation certificates

Any decision to refuse to issue or renew a Community inland navigation certificate shall state the grounds on which it is based. The person concerned shall be notified thereof and of the appeal procedure and its time limits in the Member State concerned.

Any valid Community inland navigation certificate may be withdrawn by the competent authority which issued or renewed it if the craft ceases to comply with the technical requirements specified in its certificate.

Article 17

Additional inspections

The competent authorities of a Member State may, in accordance with Annex VIII, check at any time whether a craft is carrying a certificate valid under the terms of this Directive and satisfies the requirements set out in such certificate or constitutes a manifest danger for the persons on board, the environment or the navigation. The competent authorities shall take the necessary measures in accordance with Annex VIII.

Article 18

Recognition of navigability certificates of craft from third countries

Pending the conclusion of agreements on the mutual recognition of navigability certificates between the Community and third countries, the competent authorities of a Member State may recognise the navigability certificates of craft from third countries for navigation on the waterways of that Member State.

The issuance of Community inland navigation certificates to craft from third countries shall be carried out in accordance with Article 8(1).

Article 19

Committee procedure

1 The Commission shall be assisted by the Committee established under Article 7 of Council Directive 91/672/EEC of 16 December 1991 on the reciprocal recognition of national boatmasters' certificates for the carriage of goods and passengers by inland waterway⁽⁹⁾ (hereinafter referred to as 'the Committee').

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Where reference is made to this paragraph, Articles 3 and 7 of Decision 1999/468/EC shall apply, having regard to the provisions of Article 8 thereof.

[^{F13} Where reference is made to this paragraph, Article 5a(1) to (4) and (5)(b), and Article 7 of Decision 1999/468/EC shall apply, having regard to the provisions of Article 8 thereof.

The time limits provided for in Article 5a(3)(c), (4)(b) and (4)(e) of Decision 1999/468/EC shall be set at twenty-one days, fifteen days and one month respectively.

4 Where reference is made to this paragraph, Article 5a(1), (2), (4) and (6), and Article 7 of Decision 1999/468/EC shall apply, having regard to the provisions of Article 8 thereof.]

Textual Amendments

- F1** Inserted by [Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006 amending Directive 2006/87/EC laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels \(2006/137/EC\)](#).

[^{F2} Article 20

Adaptation of the Annexes and recommendations on provisional certificates

1 Any amendments which are necessary to adapt the Annexes to this Directive to technical progress or to developments in this area arising from the work of other international organisations, in particular that of the Central Commission for Navigation on the Rhine (CCNR), to ensure that the two certificates referred to in Article 3(1)(a) are issued on the basis of technical requirements which guarantee an equivalent level of safety, or to take account of the cases referred to in Article 5, shall be adopted in accordance with the regulatory procedure with scrutiny referred to in Article 19(3). On imperative grounds of urgency, the Commission may follow the urgency procedure referred to in Article 19(4).

Those amendments shall be made rapidly in order to ensure that the technical requirements for the issuing of the Community inland navigation certificate recognised for navigation on the Rhine give a level of safety equivalent to that required for the issuing of the certificate referred to in Article 22 of the Revised Convention for Rhine Navigation.

2 Notwithstanding paragraph 1, the Commission shall adopt the approvals referred to in Article 5(2) in accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 19(2).

3 The Commission shall decide on recommendations from the Committee on the issue of provisional Community inland navigation certificates in accordance with Article 2.19 of Annex II.]

Textual Amendments

- F2** Substituted by [Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006 amending Directive 2006/87/EC laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels \(2006/137/EC\)](#).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 21

Continued applicability of Directive 76/135/EEC

For those craft outside the scope of Article 2(1) and (2) of this Directive, but falling within the scope of Article 1(a) of Directive 76/135/EEC, the provisions of that Directive shall apply.

Article 22

National additional or reduced requirements

Additional requirements which were in force in a Member State before 30 December 2008 for craft operating within its territory on Zone 1 and 2 waterways or reduced technical requirements for craft operating within its territory on Zone 3 and 4 waterways which were in force in a Member State before that date shall continue to be in force until additional requirements in accordance with Article 5(1) or reductions in accordance with Article 5(7) of the technical prescriptions of Annex II come into force, but only until 30 June 2009.

Article 23

Transposition

1 Member States which have inland waterways as referred to in Article 1(1) shall bring into force the laws, regulations and administrative provisions necessary to comply with this Directive with effect from 30 December 2008. They shall forthwith inform the Commission thereof.

When Member States adopt these measures, they shall contain a reference to this Directive or shall be accompanied by such reference on the occasion of their official publication. The methods of making such reference shall be laid down by Member States.

2 Member States shall immediately communicate to the Commission the text of the provisions of national law which they adopt in the field covered by this Directive. The Commission shall inform the other Member States thereof.

Article 24

Penalties

Member States shall lay down a system of penalties for breaches of the national provisions adopted pursuant to this Directive and shall take all the measures necessary to ensure that these penalties are applied. The penalties thus provided for shall be effective, proportionate and dissuasive.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 25

Repeal of Directive 82/714/EEC

Directive 82/714/EEC shall be repealed with effect from 30 December 2008.

Article 26

Entry into force

This Directive shall enter into force on the day of its publication in the *Official Journal of the European Union*.

Article 27

Addressees

This Directive is addressed to the Member States which have inland waterways as referred to in Article 1(1).

ANNEX I

LIST OF COMMUNITY INLAND WATERWAYS DIVIDED
GEOGRAPHICALLY INTO ZONES 1, 2, 3 AND 4

CHAPTER 1

Zone 1

Federal Republic of Germany

Ems	from a line linking the former Greetsiel lighthouse and the western pier of the port entrance at Eemshaven seawards as far as latitude 53° 30' N and longitude 6° 45' E, i.e. slightly seawards of the lightering area for dry-cargo carriers in the Alte Ems ^a
-----	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

a In the case of vessels whose home port is elsewhere, account is to be taken of Article 32 of the Ems-Dollart Treaty of 8 April 1960 (BGBl. 1963 II, p. 602).

Republic of Poland

The part of Pomorska Bay southward from the line linking NordPerd on Rugen Island and the lighthouse Niechorze.

The part of Gdańska Bay southward from the line linking the lighthouse Hel and the entrance buoy to the port of Baltijsk.

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

SCOTLAND

Blue Mull Sound	Between Gutcher and Belmont
Yell Sound	Between Tofts Voe and Ulsta
Sullom Voe	Within a line from the north-east point of Gluss Island to the northern point of Calback Ness
Dales Voe	In winter: within a line from the north point of Kebister Ness to the Coast of Breiwick at longitude 1° 10,8' W
Dales Voe	In summer: as for Lerwick
Lerwick	In winter: within the area bounded to the northward by a line from Scottle Holm to Scarfi Taing on Bressay and to the southward by a line from Twageos Point Lighthouse to Whalpa Taing on Bressay
Lerwick	In summer:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	within the area bounded to the northward by a line from Brim Ness to the north east corner of Inner Score and to the southward by a line from the south end of Ness of Sound to Kirkabisterness
Kirkwall	Between Kirkwall and Rousay not east of a line between Point of Graand (Egilsay) and Galt Ness (Shapinsay) or between Head of Work (Mainland) through Helliar Holm light to the shore of Shapinsay; not north west of the south east tip of Eynhallow Island, not to seaward and a line between the shore on Rousay at 59°10,5' N 002° 57,1' W and the shore on Egilsay at 59° 10' N 002° 56,4' W
Stromness	To Scapa but not outside Scapa Flow
Scapa Flow	Within an area bounded by lines drawn from Point of Cletts on the island of Hoy to Thomson's Hill triangulation point on the island of Fara and thence to Gibraltar Pier on the island of Flotta; from St Vincent Pier on the island of Flotta to the westernmost point of Calf of Flotta; from the easternmost point of the Calf of Flotta to Needle Point on the island of South Ronaldsay and from the Ness on Mainland to Point of Oxan lighthouse on the island of Graemsay and thence to Bu Point on the island of Hoy; and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Balnakiel Bay	Between Eilean Dubh and A'Chleit
Cromarty Firth	Within a line from North Sutor to Nairn Breakwater and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Inverness	Within a line from North Sutor to Nairn Breakwater and seaward of Zone 2 waters
River Tay — Dundee	Within a line from Broughty Castle to Tayport and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Firth of Forth and River Forth	Within a line from Kirkcaldy to River Portobello and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Solway Firth	Within a line from Southernness Point to Silloth
Loch Ryan	Within a line from Finnart's Point to Milleur Point and seaward of Zone 2 waters
The Clyde	Outer limit: a line from Skipness to a position one mile south of Garroch Head thence to Farland Head Inner limit in winter:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	<p>a line from Cloch Lighthouse to Dunoon Pier</p> <p>Inner limit in summer:</p> <p>a line from Bogany Point, Isle of Bute to Skelmorlie Castle and a line from Ardlamont Point to the southern extremity of Etrick Bay inside the Kyles of Bute</p> <p><i>Note:</i> The above inner summer limit is extended between 5 June and 5 September (both dates inclusive) by a line from a point two miles off the Ayrshire coast at Skelmorlie Castle to Tomont End, Cumbrae, and a line from Portachur Point, Cumbrae to Inner Brigurd Point, Ayrshire</p>
Oban	Within an area bounded on the north by a line from Dunollie Point Light to Ard na Chruidh and to the south by a line from Rudha Seanach to Ard na Cuile
Kyle of Lochalsh	Through Loch Alsh to the head of Loch Duich
Loch Gairloch	<p>In winter:</p> <p>none</p> <p>In summer:</p> <p>South of a line running east from Rubha na Moine to Eilan Horrisdale and thence to Rubha nan Eanntag</p>
NORTHERN IRELAND	
Belfast Lough	<p>In winter:</p> <p>none</p> <p>In summer:</p> <p>within a line from Carrickfergus to Bangor and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Loch Neagh	At a greater distance than 2 miles from the shore
EAST COAST OF ENGLAND	
River Humber	<p>In winter:</p> <p>within a line from New Holland to Paull</p> <p>In summer:</p> <p>within a line from Cleethorpes Pier to Patrington Church and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
WALES AND WEST COAST OF ENGLAND	
River Severn	<p>In winter:</p> <p>within a line from Blacknore Point to Caldicot Pill, Porstkewett</p>

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	<p>In summer: within a line from Barry Dock Pier to Steephholm and thence to Brean Down and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
River Wye	<p>In winter: within a line from Blacknore Point to Caldicot Pill, Portskewett</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Barry Dock Pier to Steephholm and thence to Brean Down and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Newport	<p>In winter: none</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Barry Dock Pier to Steephholm and thence to Brean Down and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Cardiff	<p>In winter: none</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Barry Dock Pier to Steephholm and thence to Brean Down and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Barry	<p>In winter: None</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Barry Dock Pier to Steephholm and thence to Brean Down and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Swansea	<p>Within a line joining the seaward ends of the breakwaters</p>
Menai Straits	<p>Within the Menai Straits from a line joining Llanddwyn Island Light to Dinas Dinlleu and lines joining the south end of Puffin Island to Trwyn DuPoint and Llanfairfechan Railway Station, and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
River Dee	<p>In winter: within a line from Hilbre Point to Point of Air</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Formby Point to Point of Air and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

River Mersey	In winter: None In summer: within a line from Formby Point to Point of Air and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Preston and Southport	Within a line from Southport to Blackpool inside the banks and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Fleetwood	In winter: None In summer: within a line from Rossal Point to Humphrey Head and seaward of Zone 2 waters
River Lune	In winter: None In summer: within a line from Rossal Point to Humphrey Head and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Heysham	In winter: None In summer: within a line from Rossal Point to Humphrey Head
Morecambe	In winter: None In the summer: from within a line from Rossal Point to Humphrey Head
Workington	Within a line from Southernness Point to Silloth and seaward of Zone 2 waters
SOUTH OF ENGLAND	
River Colne, Colchester	In winter: within a line from Colne Point to Whitstable In summer: within a line from Clacton Pier to Reculvers
River Blackwater	In winter: within a line from Colne Point to Whitstable In summer: within a line from Clacton Pier to Reculvers and seaward of Zone 2 waters

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

River Crouch and River Roach	<p>In winter: within a line from Colne Point to Whitstable</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Clacton Pier to Reculvers and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
River Thames and its tributaries	<p>In winter: within a line from Colne Point to Whitstable</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Clacton Pier to Reculvers and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
River Medway and the Swale	<p>In winter: within a line from Colne Point to Whitstable</p> <p>In summer: within a line from Clacton Pier to Reculvers and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Chichester	<p>Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Langstone Harbour	<p>Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Portsmouth	<p>Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Bembridge, Isle of Wight	<p>Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters</p>
Cowes, Isle of Wight	<p>Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church,</p>

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Southampton	Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Beaulieu River	Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Keyhaven Lake	Inside the Isle of Wight within an area bounded by lines drawn between the church spire, West Wittering, to Trinity Church, Bembridge, to the eastward, and the Needles and Hurst Point to the westward and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Weymouth	Within Portland Harbour and between the River Wey and Portland Harbour
Plymouth	Within a line from Cawsand to Breakwater to Staddon and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Falmouth	In winter: within a line from St Anthony Head to Rosemullion In summer: within a line from St Anthony Head to Nare Point and seaward of Zone 2 waters
River Camel	Within a line from Stepper Point to Trebetherick Point and seaward of Zone 2 waters
Bridgewater	Within the bar and seaward of Zone 2 waters
River Avon (Avon)	In winter: within a line from Blacknore Point to Caldicot Pill, Portskewett In summer: within a line from Barry Pier to Steephholm and thence to Brean Down and seaward of Zone 2 waters

Zone 2

Czech Republic

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Dam Lake Lipno
Federal Republic of Germany

Ems	From a line across the Ems near the entrance to the port of Papenburg between Diemen pumping station and the opening of the dyke at Halte as far as a line linking the former Greetsiel lighthouse and the western pier of the port entrance at Eemshaven
Jade	Inside a line linking the Schillig cross light and Langwarden church tower
Weser	From the north-western edge of the railway bridge in Bremen as far as a line linking Langwarden and Cappel church towers, including the Westergate, Rekumer Loch, Rechter Nebenarm and Schweiburg side branches
Elbe	From the lower limit of the port of Hamburg as far as a line linking the Döse beacon and the western edge of the Friedrichskoog dyke (Dieksand), including the Nebelbe and the Este, Lühe, Schwinge, Oste, Pinnau, Krückau and Stör tributaries (in each case from the mouth to the barrage)
Meldorfer Bucht	Inside a line linking the western edge of the Friedrichskoog dyke (Dieksand) and the western pier head at Büsum
Eider	From the Gieselau Canal to the Eider barrage
Flensburger Förde	Inside a line linking Kegnäs lighthouse and Birknack
Schlei	Inside a line between the Schleimünde pier heads
Eckernförder Bucht	Inside a line linking Boknis-Eck and the north-eastern point of the mainland near Dänisch Nienhof
Kieler Förde	Inside a line linking the Bülk lighthouse and the Laboe naval memorial
Nord-Ostsee-Kanal (Kiel Canal)	From a line linking the pier heads at Brunsbüttel as far as a line linking the entry lights at Kiel-Holtenu, including Obereidersee and Enge, Audorfer See, Borgstedter See and Enge, Schirnauer See, Flemhuder See and the Achterwehrer Canal
Trave	from the north-western edge of the railway lift bridge and the northern edge of the Holstenbrücke (Stadttrave) in Lübeck as far as a line linking the southern inner and

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	northern outer pier heads at Travemünde, including the Pötenitzer Wiek, Dassower See and the Altarmen at Teerhof island
Leda	From the entrance of the outer harbour of Leer sea lock to the mouth
Hunte	from the port of Oldenburg and from 140 m downstream of the Amalienbrücke in Oldenburg to the mouth
Lesum	From the Bremen-Burg railway bridge to the mouth
Este	From the tail water of Buxtehude lock to the Este barrage
Lühe	From the tail water of the Au-Mühle in Horneburg to the Lühe barrage
Schwinge	From the Salztor lock in Stade to the Schwinge barrage
Oste	From the north-eastern edge of the Bremervörde mill dam to the Oste barrage
Pinnau	From the south-western edge of the railway bridge in Pinneberg to the Pinnau barrage
Krückkau	From the south-western edge of the bridge leading to/from the Wedenkamp in Elmshorn to the Krückkau barrage
Stör	From Rensing tide gauge to the Stör barrage
Freiburger Hafenvriel	From the eastern edge of the sluice in Freiburg an der Elbe as far as the mouth
Wismarbucht, Kirchsee, Breitling, Salzhaff and Wismar port area	Seawards as far as a line between Hoher Wieschendorf Huk and Timmendorf light and a line linking Gollwitz light on the island of Poel and the southern point of the Wustrow peninsula
Warnow, including the Breitling and side branches	Downstream of the Mühlendamm from the northern edge of the Geinitzbrücke in Rostock towards the sea as far as a line linking the northern points of the western and eastern piers in Warnemünde
Waters enclosed by the mainland and the Darß and Zingst peninsulas and the islands of Hiddensee and Rügen (including Stralsund port area)	Extending seawards between — the Zingst peninsula and the island of Bock: as far as latitude 54° 26' 42' N — the islands of Bock and Hiddensee: as far as a line linking the northern point of the island of Bock and the southern point of the island of Hiddensee

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	— the island of Hiddensee and the island of Rügen (Bug): as far as a line linking the south-eastern point of Neubessin and Buger Haken
Greifswalder Bodden and Greifswald port area, including the Ryck	Seawards as far as a line from the eastern point of Thiessower Haken (Südperd) to the eastern point of the island of Ruden and continuing to the northern point of the island of Usedom (54° 10' 37' N, 13° 47' 51' E)
Waters enclosed by the mainland and the island of Usedom (the Peenestrom, including Wolgast port area and Achterwasser, and the Stettiner Haff)	Eastwards as far as the border with the Republic of Poland in the Stettiner Haff

Note In the case of vessels whose home port is in another State, account is to be taken of Article 32 of the Ems-Dollart Treaty of 8 April 1960 (BGBl. 1963 II, p. 602).
French Republic

Dordogne	Downstream from the stone bridge at Libourne
Garonne and Gironde	Downstream from the stone bridge at Bordeaux
Loire	Downstream from the Haudaudine bridge on the Madeleine arm and downstream from the Pirmil bridge on the Pirmil arm.
Rhône	Downstream of the Trinquetaille bridge in Arles and beyond towards Marseille
Seine	Downstream of the Jeanne-d'Arc bridge in Rouen

Republic of Hungary

Lake Balaton

Kingdom of the Netherlands

Dollard

Eems

Waddenzee: including the links with the North Sea

IJsselmeer: including the Markermeer and IJmeer but excluding the Gouwzee

Nieuwe Waterweg and the Scheur

Calland Kanaal west from the Benelux harbour

Hollands Diep

Breeddiep, Beerkanaal and its connected harbours

Haringvliet and Vuile Gat: including the waterways between Goeree-Overflakkee on the one hand and Voorne-Putten and Hoeksche Waard on the other

Hellegat

Volkerak

Krammer

Grevelingenmeer and Brouwerschavensche Gat: including all the waterways between Schouwen-Duiveland and Goeree-Overflakkee

Keten, Mastgat, Zijpe, Krabbenkreek, Eastern Scheldt and Roompot: including the waterways between Walcheren, Noord-Beveland and Zuid-Beveland on the one hand and Schouwen-Duiveland and Tholen on the other hand, excluding the Scheldt-Rhine Canal

Scheldt and Western Scheldt and its mouth on the sea: including the waterways between Zeeland Flanders, on the one hand, and Walcheren and Zuid-Beveland, on the other, excluding the Scheldt-Rhine Canal

Republic of Poland

Lagoon of Szczecin

Lagoon of Kamień

Lagoon of Wisła

Bay of Puck

Włocławski Reservoir

Lake Śniardwy

Lake Niegocin

Lake Mamry

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

SCOTLAND

Scapa Flow	Within an area bounded by lines drawn from Wharh on the island of Flotta to the Martello Tower on South Walls, and from Point Cletts on the island of Hoy to Thomson's Hill triangulation point on the island of Fara and thence to Gibraltar Pier on the island of Flotta
Kyle of Durness	South of Eilean Dubh
Cromarty Firth	Within a line between North Sutor and South Sutor
Inverness	Within a line from Fort George to Chanonry Point
Findhorn Bay	Within the spit
Aberdeen	Within a line from South Jetty to Abercromby Jetty

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Montrose Basin	To the west of a line running north-south across the harbour entrance at Scurdie Ness Lighthouse
River Tay — Dundee	Within a line from the tidal basin (fish dock), Dundee to Craig Head, East Newport
Firth of Forth and River Forth	Within the Firth of Forth but not east of the Forth railway bridge
Dumfries	Within a line from Airs Point to Scar Point
Loch Ryan	Within a line from Cairn Point to Kircolm Point
Ayr Harbour	Inside the Bar
The Clyde	Above Zone 1 waters
Kyles of Bute	Between Colintrave and Rhubodach
Campbeltown Harbour	Within a line from Macringan's Point to Ottercharach Point
Loch Etive	Within Loch Etive above the Falls of Lora
Loch Leven	Above the bridge at Ballachulish
Loch Linnhe	North of Corran Point light
Loch Eil	The whole loch
Caledonian Canal	Lochs Lochy, Oich and Ness
Kyle of Lochalsh	Within Kyle Akin not westward of Eilean Ban Light or eastward of Eileanan Dubha
Loch Carron	Between Stromemore and Strome Ferry
Loch Broom, Ullapool	Within a line from Ullapool Point Light to Aultnaharrie
Kylesku	Across Loch Cairnbawn in the area between the easternmost point of Garbh Eilean and the westernmost point of Eilean na Rainich
Stornoway Harbour	Within a line from Arnish Point to Sandwick Bay Lighthouse, north-west side
The Sound of Scalpay	Not east of Berry Cove (Scalpay) and not west of Croc a Loin (Harris)
North Harbour, Scalpay and Tarbert Harbour	Within one mile from the shore of the Island of Harris
Loch Awe	The whole loch
Loch Katrine	The whole loch
Loch Lomond	The whole loch
Loch Tay	The whole loch
Loch Loyal	The whole loch

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Loch Hope	The whole loch
Loch Shin	The whole loch
Loch Assynt	The whole loch
Loch Glascarnoch	The whole loch
Loch Fannich	The whole loch
Loch Maree	The whole loch
Loch Gairloch	The whole loch
Loch Monar	The whole loch
Loch Mullardach	The whole loch
Loch Cluanie	The whole loch
Loch Loyne	The whole loch
Loch Garry	The whole loch
Loch Quoich	The whole loch
Loch Arkaig	The whole loch
Loch Morar	The whole loch
Loch Shiel	The whole loch
Loch Earn	The whole loch
Loch Rannoch	The whole loch
Loch Tummel	The whole loch
Loch Ericht	The whole loch
Loch Fionn	The whole loch
Loch Glass	The whole loch
Loch Rimsdale/nan Clar	The whole loch
NORTHERN IRELAND	
Strangford Lough	Within a line from Cloghy Point to Dogtail Point
Belfast Lough	Within a line from Holywood to Macedon Point
Larne	Within a line from Larne Pier to the ferry pier on Island Magee
River Bann	From the seaward ends of the breakwaters to Toome Bridge
Lough Erne	Upper and Lower Lough Erne
Lough Neagh	Within two miles of the shore
EAST COAST OF ENGLAND	
Berwick	Within the breakwaters

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Warkworth	Within the breakwaters
Blyth	Within the Outer Pier Heads
River Tyne	Dunston Staithes to Tyne Pier Heads
River Wear	Fatfield to Sunderland Pier Heads
Seaham	Within the breakwaters
Hartlepool	Within a line from Middleton Jetty to Old Pier Head Within a line joining North Pier Head to South Pier Head
River Tees	Within a line extending due west from Government Jetty to Tees Barrage
Whitby	Within Whitby Pier Heads
River Humber	Within a line from North Ferriby to South Ferriby
Grimsby Dock	Within a line from the West Pier of the Tidal Basin to the East Pier of the Fish Docks, North Quay
Boston	Inside the New Cut
Dutch River	The whole canal
River Hull	Beverley Beck to River Humber
Kielder Water	The whole lake
River Ouse	Below Naburn Lock
River Trent	Below Cromwell Lock
River Wharfe	From the junction with River Ouse to Tadcaster Bridge
Scarborough	Within Scarborough Pier Heads
WALES AND WEST COAST OF ENGLAND	
River Severn	North of a line running due west from Sharpness Point (51° 43,4' N) to Llanthony and Maisemore Weirs and seaward of Zone 3 waters
River Wye	At Chepstow, north of latitude (51° 38,0' N) to Monmouth
Newport	North of the overhead power cables crossing at Fifoots Points
Cardiff	Within a line from South Jetty to Penarth Head and the enclosed waters to the west of Cardiff Bay Barrage

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Barry	Within a line joining the seaward ends of the breakwaters
Port Talbot	Within a line joining the seaward ends of the breakwaters on the River Afran outside enclosed docks
Neath	Within a line running due North from the seaward end of Baglan Bay Tanker Jetty (51° 37,2' N, 3° 50,5' W)
Llanelli and Burry Port	Within an area bounded by a line drawn from Burry Port Western Pier to Whiteford Point
Milford Haven	Within a line from South Hook Point to Thorn Point
Fishguard	Within a line joining the seaward ends of the north and east breakwaters
Cardigan	Within the Narrows at Pen-Yr-Ergyd
Aberystwyth	Within the seaward ends of the breakwaters
Aberdyfi	Within a line from Aberdyfi Railway Station to Twyni Bach Beacon
Barmouth	Within a line from Barmouth Railway Station to Penrhyn Point
Portmadoc	Within a line from Harlech Point to Graig Ddu
Holyhead	Within an area bounded by the main breakwater and a line drawn from the head of the breakwater to Brynglas Point, Towyn Bay
Menai Straits	Within the Menai Straits between a line joining Aber Menai Point to Belan Point and a line joining Beaumaris Pier to Pen-y-Coed Point
Conway	Within a line from Mussel Hill to Tremlyd Point
Llandudno	Within the breakwater
Rhyl	Within the breakwater
River Dee	Above Connah's Quay to Barrelwell Hill water extraction point
River Mersey	Within a line between the Rock Lighthouse and the North West Seaforth Dockbut excluding other docks
Preston and Southport	Within a line from Lytham to Southport and within Preston Docks
Fleetwood	Within a line from Low Light to Knott

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

River Lune	Within a line from Sunderland Point to Chapel Hill up to and including Glasson Dock
Barrow	Within a line joining Haws Point, Isle of Walney to Roa Island Slipway
Whitehaven	Within the breakwater
Workington	Within the breakwater
Maryport	Within the breakwater
Carlisle	Within a line joining Point Carlisle to Torduff
Coniston Water	The whole lake
Derwentwater	The whole lake
Ullswater	The whole lake
Windermere	The whole lake
SOUTH OF ENGLAND	
Blakeney and Morston Harbour and approaches	To the east of a line running south from Blakeney Point to the entrance of the Stiffkey River
River Orwell and River Stour	River Orwell within a line from Blackmanshead breakwater to Landguard Point and seaward of Zone 3 waters
River Blackwater	All waterways within a line from the south-western extremity of Mersea Island to Sales Point
River Crouch and River Roach	River Crouch within a line from Holliwell Point to Foulness Point, including the River Roach
River Thames and its tributaries	River Thames above a line drawn north/south through the eastern extremity of Denton Wharf Pier, Gravesend to Teddington Lock
River Medway and the Swale	River Medway from a line drawn from Garrison Point to the Grain Tower, to Allington Lock; and the Swale from Whitstable to the Medway
River Stour (Kent)	River Stour above the mouth to the landing at Flagstaff Reach
Dover Harbour	Within lines drawn across the east and west entrances to the Harbour
River Rother	River Rother above the Tidal Signal Station at Camber to Scots Float Sluice and to the entrance lock on the River Brede

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

River Adur and Southwick Canal	Within a line drawn across Shoreham Harbour entrance to Southwick Canal Lock and to the west end of Tarmac Wharf
River Arun	River Arun above Littlehampton Pier to Littlehampton Marina
River Ouse (Sussex) Newhaven	River Ouse from a line drawn across Newhaven Harbour entrance piers to the north end of North Quay
Brighton	Brighton Marina outer harbour within a line from the southern end of West Quay to the north end of South Quay
Chichester	Within a line drawn between Eastoke point and the church spire, West Wittering and seaward of Zone 3 waters
Langstone Harbour	Within a line drawn between Eastney Point and Gunner Point
Portsmouth	Within a line drawn across the harbour entrance from Port Blockhouse to the Round Tower
Bembridge, Isle of Wight	Within Brading Harbour
Cowes, Isle of Wight	The River Medina within a line from the Breakwater Light on the east bank to the House Light on the west bank
Southampton	Within a line from Calshot Castle to Hook Beacon
Beaulieu River	Within Beaulieu River not eastward of a north/south line through Inchmery House
Keyhaven Lake	Within a line drawn due north from Hurst Point Low Light to Keyhaven Marshes
Christchurch	The Run
Poole	Within the line of the Chain Ferry between Sandbanks and South Haven Point
Exeter	Within an east-west line from Warren Point to the Inshore Lifeboat Station opposite Checkstone Ledge
Teignmouth	Within the harbour
River Dart	Within a line from Kettle Point to Battery Point
River Salcombe	Within a line from Splat Point to Limebury Point
Plymouth	Within a line from Mount Batten Pier to Raveness Point through Drake's Islands; the

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	River Yealm within a line from Warren Point to Misery Point
Fowey	Inside the Harbour
Falmouth	Within a line from St. Anthony Head to Pendennis Point
River Camel	Within a line from Gun Point to Brea Hill
Rivers Taw and Torridge	Within a line bearing 200° from the lighthouse on Crow Point to the shore at Skern Point
Bridgewater	South of a line running due East from Stert Point (51° 13,0 'N)
River Avon (Avon)	Within a line from Avonmouth Pier to Wharf Point, to Netham Dam

CHAPTER 2

Zone 3

Kingdom of Belgium

Maritime Scheldt (downstream of Antwerp open anchorage)

[^{F3}Republic of Bulgaria

Danube: from rkm 845,650 to rkm 374,100]

Czech Republic

Labe: from the lock Ústí nad Labem-Střekov to the lock Lovosice

Dam Lakes: Baška, Brněnská (Kníničky), Horka (Stráž pod Ralskem), Hracholusky, Jesenice, Nechanice, Olešná, Orlík, Pastviny, Plumov, Rozkoš, Seč, Skalka, Slapy, Těrlicko, Žermanice

Lake Máchovo

Water Area Velké Žernoseky

Ponds: Oleksovice, Svět, Velké Dářko

Mining Gravel Lakes: Dolní Benešov, Ostrožná Nová Ves a Tovačov

Federal Republic of Germany

Danube	From Kelheim (km 2 414,72) to the German-Austrian border
Rhine	From the German-Swiss border to the German-Netherlands border
Elbe	From the mouth of the Elbe-Seiten canal to the lower limit of the port of Hamburg
Müritz	

French Republic

Rhine

Republic of Hungary

Danube: from rkm 1812 to rkm 1433

Danube Moson: from rkm 14 to rkm 0

Danube Szentendre: from rkm 32 to rkm 0

Danube Ráckeve: from rkm 58 to rkm 0

River Tisza: from rkm 685 to rkm 160

River Dráva: from rkm 198 to rkm 70

River Bodrog: from rkm 51 to rkm 0

River Kettős-Körös: from rkm 23 to rkm 0

River Hármas-Körös: from rkm 91 to rkm 0

Channel Sió: from rkm 23 to rkm 0

Lake Velence

Lake Fertő

Kingdom of the Netherlands

Rhine

Sneekmeer, Koevordermeer, Heegermeer, Fluessen, Slotermeer, Tjeukemeer, Beulakkerwilde, Belterwilde, Ramsdiep, Ketelmeer, Zwartemeer, Veluwemeer, Eemmeer, Alkmaardermeer, Gouwzee, Buiten IJ afgesloten IJ Noordzeekanaal, port of IJmuiden, Rotterdam port area, Nieuwe Maas, Noord, Oude Maas, Beneden Merwede, Nieuwe Merwede, Dordsche Kil, Boven Merwede, Waal, Bijlandsch Canal, Boven Rijn, Pannersdensch Canal, Geldersche IJssel, Neder Rijn, Lek, Amsterdam-Rhine-Canal, Veerse Meer, Schelde-Rhine-Canal as far as the mouth in the Volkerak, Amer, Bergsche Maas, the Meuse below Venlo, Gooimeer, Europort, Calandkanaal (east from the Benelux harbour), Hartelkanaal

Republic of Austria

Danube: from the border with Germany to the border with Slovakia

Inn: from the mouth to the Passau-Ingling Power Station

Traun: from the mouth to km 1,80

Enns: from the mouth to km 2,70

March: to km 6,00

Republic of Poland

- River Biebrza from the estuary of the Augustowski Channel to the estuary of the river Narwia
- River Brda from the link with the Bydgoski Channel in Bydgoszcz to the estuary of the river Wisła
- River Bug from the estuary of the river Muchawiec to the estuary of the river Narwia
- Lake Dąbie to the frontier with internal sea waters

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- The Augustowski Channel from the link with the river Biebrza to the State border, together with the lakes located along the route of this Channel
- The Bartnicki Channel from Lake Ruda Woda to Lake Bartężek, together with Lake Bartężek
- The Bydgoski Channel
- The Elbląski Channel from Lake Druzno to Lake Jeziorak and Lake Szelaż Wielki, together with these lakes and the lakes on the route of the Channel, and a byway in the direction of Zalewo from Lake Jeziorak to Lake Ewingi, inclusive
- The Gliwicki Channel together with the Channel Kędzierzyński
- The Jagielloński Channel from the link with the river Elbląg to the river Nogat
- The Łaczański Channel
- The Ślesięński Channel with the lakes located along the route of this Channel and Lake Gopło
- The Żerański Channel
- River Martwa Wisła from the river Wisła in Przegalina to the frontier with internal sea waters
- River Narew from the estuary of the river Biebrza to the estuary of the river Wisła, together with Lake Zegrzyński
- River Nogat from the river Wisła to the estuary of the Lagoon of Wisła
- River Noteć (upper) from Lake Gopło to the link with the Górnonotecki Channel and the Górnonotecki Channel and River Noteć (lower) from the link of the Bydgoski Channel to the estuary to River Warta
- River Nysa Łużycka from Gubin to the estuary to River Odra
- River Odra from the town of Racibórz to the link with River Eastern Odra which turns into River Regalica from the Klucz-Ustowo Piercing, together with that river and its side-branches to Lake Dąbie as well as a byway of River Odra from the Opatowice lock to the lock in Wrocław city
- River Western Odra from a weir in Widuchowa (704,1 km of River Odra) to a border with internal sea waters, together with side-branches as well as the Klucz-Ustowo Piercing linking River Eastern Odra with River Western Odra
- River Parnica and the Parnicki Piercing from River Western Odra to a border with internal sea waters
- River Pisa from Lake Roś to the estuary of River Narew
- River Szarpawa from River Wisła to the estuary of the Lagoon of Wisła
- River Warta from the Ślesięńskie Lake to the estuary of River Odra
- System of Wielkie Jeziora Mazurskie encompassing the lakes linked by the rivers and channels constituting a main route from Lake Roś (inclusive) in Pisz to the Węgorzewski Channel (including that channel) in Węgorzewo, together with Lakes Seksty, Mikołajskie, Tały, Taltowisko, Kotek, Szymon, Szymoneckie, Jagodne,

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Boczne, Tajty, Kisajno, Dargin, Łabap, Kirsajty and Świącajty, together with the Giżycki Channel and the Niegociński Channel and the Piękna Góra Channel, and a byway of Lake Ryńskie (inclusive) in Ryn to Lake Nidzkie (up to 3 km, constituting a border with the ‘Lake Nidzkie’ nature reserve), together with lakes Beldany, Guzianka Mała and Guzianka Wielka

- River Wisła from the estuary of River Przemsza to the link with the Łaczański Channel as well as from the estuary of that Channel in Skawina to the estuary of River Wisła to the Bay of Gdańsk, excluding the Włocławski Reservoir

[^{F3}Romania

Danube: from the Serbian–Romanian border (km 1 075) to the Black Sea on the Sulina Channel-branch

Danube–Black Sea Canal (64,410 km length): from the junction with the Danube river, at km 299,300 of the Danube at Cernavodă (respectively km 64,410 of the Canal), to the Port of Constanta South–Agigea (km ‘0’ of the Canal)

Poarta Albă–Midia Năvodari Canal (34,600 km length): from the junction with the Danube Poarta Albă–Midia Năvodari Canal (34,600 km length): from the junction with the Danube–Black Sea Canal at km 29,410 at Poarta Albă (respectively km 27,500 of the Canal) to the Port of Midia (km ‘0’ of the Canal)]

Slovak Republic

Danube: from Devín (rkm 1880,26) to the Slovak-Hungarian border
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

SCOTLAND	
Leith (Edinburgh)	Within the breakwaters
Glasgow	Strathclyde Loch
Crinan Canal	Crinan to Ardrishaig
Caledonian Canal	The canal sections
NORTHERN IRELAND	
River Lagan	Lagan Weir to Stranmillis
EAST OF ENGLAND	
River Wear (non-tidal)	Old Railway Bridge, Durham to Prebends Bridge, Durham
River Tees	Upriver from Tees Barrage
Grimsby Dock	Inside of the locks
Immingham Dock	Inside of the locks
Hull Docks	Inside of the locks
Boston Dock	Inside the lock gates
Aire and Calder Navigation	Goole Docks to Leeds; junction with Leeds and Liverpool Canal; Bank Dole Junction to Selby (River Ouse Lock); Castleford Junction to Wakefield (Falling Lock)
River Ancholme	Ferriby Sluice to Brigg

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Calder and Hebble Canal	Wakefield (Falling Lock) to Broadcut Top Lock
River Foss	From (Blue Bridge) junction with River Ouse to Monk Bridge
Fosdyke Canal	Junction with River Trent to Brayford Pool
Goole Dock	Inside the lock gates
Hornsea Mere	The whole canal
River Hull	From Struncheon Hill Lock to Beverley Beck
Market Weighton Canal	River Humber Lock to Sod Houses Lock
New Junction Canal	The whole canal
River Ouse	From Naburn Lock to Nun Monkton
Sheffield and South Yorkshire Canal	Keadby Lock to Tinsley Lock
River Trent	Cromwell Lock to Shardlow
River Witham	Boston Sluice to Brayford Poole (Lincoln)
WALES AND WEST OF ENGLAND	
River Severn	Above Llanthony and Maisemore Weirs
River Wye	Above Monmouth
Cardiff	Roath Park Lake
Port Talbot	Within the enclosed docks
Swansea	Within the enclosed docks
River Dee	Above Barrelwell Hill water extraction point
River Mersey	The docks (excluding Seaforth Dock)
River Lune	Above Glasson Dock
River Avon (Midland)	Tewkesbury Lock to Evesham
Gloucester	Gloucester City Docks Gloucester/Sharpness Canal
Hollingworth Lake	The whole lake
Manchester Ship Canal	The whole canal and Salford Docks including River Irwell
Pickmere Lake	The whole lake
River Tawe	Between Sea Barrage/Marina and the Morfa Athletics Stadium
Rudyard Lake	The whole lake
River Weaver	Below Northwich
SOUTH OF ENGLAND	
River Nene	Wisbech Cut and River Nene to Dog-in-a-Doublet Lock

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

River Great Ouse	Kings Lynn Cut and River Great Ouse below West Lynn Road Bridge
Yarmouth	River Yare Estuary from a line drawn across the ends of the north and south entrance piers, including Breydon Water
Lowestoft	Lowestoft Harbour below Mutford Lock to a line drawn across the outer harbour entrance piers
Rivers Alde and Ore	Above the entrance to the River Ore to Westrow Point
River Deben	Above the entrance of the River Deben to Felixstowe Ferry
River Orwell and River Stour	From a line drawn from Fagbury Point to Shotley Point on the River Orwell to Ipswich Dock; and from a line drawn north/south through Erwarton Ness on the River Stour to Manningtree
Chelmer & Blackwater Canal	Eastward of Beeleigh Lock
River Thames and its tributaries	River Thames above Teddington Lock to Oxford
River Adur and Southwick Canal	River Adur above the west end of Tarmac Wharf, and within Southwick Canal
River Arun	River Arun above Littlehampton Marina
River Ouse (Sussex), Newhaven	River Ouse above the north end of North Quay
Bewl Water	The whole lake
Grafham Water	The whole lake
Rutland Water	The whole lake
Thorpe Park Lake	The whole lake
Chichester	East of a line joining Cobnor Point and Chalkdock Point
Christchurch	Within Christchurch Harbour excluding the Run
Exeter Canal	The whole canal
River Avon (Avon)	Bristol City Docks Netham Dam to Pulteney Weir

CHAPTER 3

Zone 4

Kingdom of Belgium

The entire Belgian network except the waterways in Zone 3

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Czech Republic

All other waterways not listed in Zones 1, 2 and 3

Federal Republic of Germany

All inland waterways other than those in Zones 1, 2 and 3

French Republic

The entire French network except the waterways in Zones 1, 2 and 3

Italian Republic

River Po: from Piacenza to the mouth

Milan-Cremona Canal, River Po: final stretch of 15 km to the Po

River Mincio: from Mantua, Governolo to the Po

Ferrara Waterway: from the Po (Pontelagoscuro), Ferrara to Porto Garibaldi

Brondolo and Valle Canals: from the eastern Po to the Venice lagoon

Fissero Canal — Tartaro — Canalbianco: from Adria to the eastern Po

Venetian coastline: from the Venice lagoon to Grado

Republic of Lithuania

The entire Lithuanian network

Grand Duchy of Luxembourg

Moselle

Republic of Hungary

All other waterways not listed in Zones 2 and 3

Kingdom of the Netherlands

All other rivers, canals and inland seas not listed in Zones 1, 2 and 3

Republic of Austria

Thaya: up to Bernhardsthal

March: above km 6,00

Republic of Poland

All other waterways not listed in Zones 1, 2 and 3

[^{F3}Romania

All other waterways not listed in Zone 3]

Slovak Republic

All other waterways not listed in Zone 3

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

SCOTLAND

Ratho and Linlithgow Union Canal	The whole canal
Glasgow	Forth and Clyde Canal Monkland Canal, Faskine and Drumpellier sections Hogganfield Loch

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

EAST OF ENGLAND	
River Ancholme	Brigg to Harram Hill Lock
Calder and Hebble Canal	Broadcut Top Lock to Sowerby Bridge
Chesterfield Canal	West Stockwith to Worksop
Cromford Canal	The whole canal
River Derwent	From junction with River Ouse to Stamford Bridge
Driffield Navigation	From Struncheon Hill Lock to Great Driffield
Erewash Canal	Trent Lock to Langley Mill Lock
Huddersfield Canal	Junction with Calder and Hebble at Coopers Bridge to Huddersfield Narrow Canal at Huddersfield Between Ashton-Under-Lyne and Huddersfield
Leeds and Liverpool Canal	From Leeds River Lock to Skipton Wharf
Light Water Valley Lake	The whole lake
The Mere, Scarborough	The whole lake
River Ouse	Above Nun Monkton Pool
Pocklington Canal	From the junction with River Derwent to Melbourne Basin
Sheffield and South Yorkshire Canal	Tinsley Lock to Sheffield
River Soar	Trent Junction to Loughborough
Trent and Mersey Canal	Shardlow to Dellow Lane Lock
River Ure and Ripon Canal	From Junction with River Ouse to Ripon Canal (Ripon Basin)
Ashton Canal	The whole canal
WALES AND WEST OF ENGLAND	
River Avon (Midland)	Above Evesham
Birmingham Canal Navigation	The whole canal
Birmingham and Fazeley Canal	The whole canal
Coventry Canal	The whole canal
Grand Union Canal (from Napton Junction to Birmingham and Fazeley)	The whole section of the canal
Kennet and Avon Canal (Bath to Newbury)	The whole section of the canal
Lancaster Canal	The whole canal
Leeds and Liverpool Canal	The whole canal
Llangollen Canal	The whole canal

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Caldon Canal	The whole canal
Peak Forest Canal	The whole canal
Macclesfield Canal	The whole canal
Monmouthshire and Brecon Canal	The whole canal
Montgomery Canal	The whole canal
Rochdale Canal	The whole canal
Swansea Canal	The whole canal
Neath & Tennant Canal	The whole canal
Shropshire Union Canal	The whole canal
Staffordshire and Worcester Canal	The whole canal
Stratford-upon-Avon Canal	The whole canal
River Trent	The whole river
Trent and Mersey Canal	The whole canal
River Weaver	Above Northwich
Worcester and Birmingham Canal	The whole canal
SOUTH OF ENGLAND	
River Nene	Above Dog-in-a-Doublet Lock
River Great Ouse	Kings Lynn above West Lynn Road Bridge; River Great Ouse and all connected Fenland Waterways including the River Cam and Middle Level Navigation
The Norfolk and Suffolk Broads	All navigable tidal and non-tidal rivers, broads, canals and waterways within the Norfolk and Suffolk Broads including Oulton Broad, and Rivers Waveney, Yare, Bure, Ant and Thurne except as specified for Yarmouth and Lowestoft
River Blyth	River Blyth, entrance to Blythburgh
Rivers Alde and Ore	On the River Alde above Westrow Point
River Deben	River Deben above Felixstowe Ferry
River Orwell and River Stour	All waterways on the River Stour above Manningtree
Chelmer & Blackwater Canal	Westward of Beeleigh Lock
River Thames and its tributaries	River Stort and River Lee above Bow Creek; Grand Union Canal above Brentford Lock and Regents Canal above Limehouse Basin and all canals connected therewith; River Wey above Thames Lock; Kennet and Avon Canal; River Thames above Oxford; Oxford Canal

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

River Medway and the Swale	River Medway above Allington Lock
River Stour (Kent)	River Stour above the landing at Flagstaff Reach
Dover Harbour	The whole harbour
River Rother	River Rother and the Royal Military Canal above Scots Float Sluice and River Brede above the entrance lock
Brighton	Brighton Marina inner harbour above the lock
Wickstead Park Lake	The whole lake
Kennet and Avon Canal	The whole canal
Grand Union Canal	The whole canal
River Avon (Avon)	Above Pulteney Weir
Bridgewater Canal	The whole canal

ANNEX II

MINIMUM TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO VESSELS ON INLAND WATERWAYS OF ZONES 1, 2, 3 AND 4

PART I

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL

Article 1.01

Definitions

The following definitions shall apply in this Directive:

Types of craft

1. 'craft': a vessel or item of floating equipment;
2. 'vessel': an inland waterway vessel or sea-going ship;
3. 'inland waterway vessel': a vessel intended solely or mainly for navigation on inland waterways;
4. 'sea-going ship': a vessel certificated for sea-going service;
5. 'motor vessel': a motor cargo vessel or a motor tanker;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

6. 'motor tanker': a vessel intended for the carriage of goods in fixed tanks and built to navigate independently under its own motive power;
7. 'motor cargo vessel': a vessel, other than a motor tanker, intended for the carriage of goods and built to navigate independently under its own motive power;
8. 'canal barge': an inland waterway vessel not exceeding 38,5 m in length and 5,05 m in breadth and usually operating on the Rhine-Rhône Canal;
9. 'tug': a vessel specially built to perform towing operations;
10. 'pusher': a vessel specially built to propel a pushed convoy;
11. 'barge': a dumb barge or tank barge;
12. 'tank barge': a vessel intended for the carriage of goods in fixed tanks and built to be towed, either having no motive power of its own or having only sufficient motive power to perform restricted manoeuvres;
13. 'dumb barge': a vessel, other than a tank barge, intended for the carriage of goods and built to be towed, either having no motive power of its own or having only sufficient motive power to perform restricted manoeuvres;
14. 'lighter': a tank lighter, cargo lighter or ship-borne lighter;
15. 'tank lighter': a vessel intended for the carriage of goods in fixed tanks, built or specially modified to be pushed, either having no motive power of its own or having only sufficient motive power to perform restricted manoeuvres when not part of a pushed convoy;
16. 'cargo lighter': a vessel, other than a tank lighter, intended for the carriage of goods and built or specially modified to be pushed, either having no motive power of its own or having only sufficient motive power to perform restricted manoeuvres when not part of a pushed convoy;
17. 'ship-borne lighter': a lighter built to be carried aboard sea-going ships and to navigate on inland waterways;
18. 'passenger vessel': a day trip or cabin vessel constructed and equipped to carry more than 12 passengers;
19. 'passenger sailing vessel': a passenger vessel built and fitted out also with a view to propulsion under sail;
20. 'day-trip vessel': a passenger vessel without overnight passenger cabins;
21. 'cabin vessel': a passenger vessel with overnight passenger cabins;
22. 'high-speed vessel': a motorised craft capable of reaching speeds over 40 km/h in relation to water;
23. 'floating equipment': a floating installation carrying working gear such as cranes, dredging equipment, pile drivers or elevators;
24. 'worksite craft': a vessel, appropriately built and equipped for use at worksites, such as a reclamation barge, hopper or pontoon barge, pontoon or stone-dumping vessel;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

25. 'recreational craft': a vessel other than a passenger vessel, intended for sport or pleasure;
26. 'ship's boat': a boat for use in transport, rescue, salvage and work duties;
27. 'floating establishment': any floating installation not normally intended to be moved, such as a swimming bath, dock, jetty or boathouse;
28. 'floating objec': a raft or other structure, object or assembly capable of navigation, not being a vessel or floating equipment or establishment;

Assemblies of craft

29. 'convoy': a rigid or towed convoy of craft;
30. 'formation': the manner in which a convoy is assembled;
31. 'rigid convoy': a pushed convoy or side-by-side formation;
32. 'pushed convoy': a rigid assembly of craft of which at least one is positioned in front of the craft providing the power for propelling the convoy, known as the 'pusher(s)'; a convoy composed of a pusher and a pushed craft coupled so as to permit guided articulation is also considered as rigid;
33. 'side-by-side formation': an assembly of craft coupled rigidly side by side, none of which is positioned in front of the craft propelling the assembly;
34. 'towed convoy': an assembly of one or more craft, floating establishments or floating objects towed by one or more self-propelled craft forming part of the convoy;

Particular areas on board

35. 'main engine room': space where the propulsion engines are installed;
36. 'engine room': space where combustion engines are installed;
37. 'boiler room': a space housing a fuel-operated installation designed to produce steam or heat a thermal fluid;
38. 'enclosed superstructure': a watertight, rigid, continuous structure with rigid walls joined to the deck in a permanent and watertight manner;
39. 'wheelhouse': the area which houses all the control and monitoring instruments necessary for manoeuvring the vessel;
40. 'accommodation': a space intended for the use of persons normally living on board, including galleys, storage space for provisions, toilets and washing facilities, laundry facilities, ante-rooms and passageways, but not the wheelhouse;
41. 'passenger area': areas on board intended for passengers and enclosed areas such as lounges, offices, shops, hairdressing salons, drying rooms, laundries, saunas, toilets, washrooms, passageways, connecting passages and stairs not encapsulated by walls;
42. 'control centre': a wheelhouse, an area which contains an emergency electrical power plant or parts thereof or an area with a centre permanently

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- occupied by on-board personnel or crew members, such as for fire alarm equipment, remote controls of doors or fire dampers;
43. 'stairwell': the well of an internal staircase or of a lift;
44. 'lounge': a room of an accommodation or a passenger area. On board passenger vessels, galleys are not regarded as lounges;
45. 'galley': a room with a stove or a similar cooking appliance;
46. 'store room': a room for the storage of flammable liquids or a room with an area of over 4 m² for storing supplies;
47. 'hold': part of the vessel, bounded fore and aft by bulkheads, opened or closed by means of hatch covers, intended for the carriage of goods, whether packaged or in bulk, or for housing tanks not forming part of the hull;
48. 'fixed tank': a tank joined to the vessel, the walls of the tank consisting either of the hull itself or of a casing separate from the hull;
49. 'working station': an area where members of the crew carry out their duties, including gangway, derrick and ship's boat;
50. 'passageway': an area intended for the normal movement of persons and goods;
51. 'safe area': the area which is externally bounded by a vertical surface running at a distance of $1/5 B_{WL}$ parallel to the course of the hull in the line of maximum draught;
52. 'muster areas': areas of the vessel which are specially protected and in which passengers muster in the event of danger;
53. 'evacuation areas': part of muster areas of the vessel from which evacuation of persons can be carried out;

Marine engineering terms

54. 'plane of maximum draught': the water plane corresponding to the maximum draught at which the craft is authorised to navigate;
55. 'safety clearance': the distance between the plane of maximum draught and the parallel plane passing through the lowest point above which the craft is no longer deemed to be watertight;
56. 'residual safety clearance': the vertical clearance available, in the event of the vessel heeling over, between the water level and the lowest point of the immersed side, beyond which the vessel is no longer regarded as watertight;
57. 'freeboard (f)': the distance between the plane of maximum draught and a parallel plane passing through the lowest point of the gunwale or, in the absence of a gunwale, the lowest point of the upper edge of the ship's side;
58. 'residual freeboard': the vertical clearance available, in the event of the vessel heeling over, between the water level and the upper surface of the deck at the lowest point of the immersed side or, if there is no deck, the lowest point of the upper surface of the fixed ship's side;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

59. 'margin line': an imaginary line drawn on the side plating not less than 10 cm below the bulkhead deck and not less than 10 cm below the lowest non-watertight point of the side plating. If there is no bulkhead deck, a line drawn not less than 10 cm below the lowest line up to which the outer plating is watertight shall be used;
60. 'water displacement (∇)': the immersed volume of the vessel, in m³;
61. 'displacement (Δ)': the total weight of the vessel, inclusive of cargo, in t;
62. 'block coefficient (C_B)': the ratio between the water displacement and the product of length L_{WL} , breadth B_{WL} and draught T ;
63. 'lateral plane above water (A_V)': lateral plane of the vessel above the waterline in m²;
64. 'bulkhead deck': the deck to which the required watertight bulkheads are taken and from which the freeboard is measured;
65. 'bulkhead': a wall of a given height, usually vertical, partitioning the vessel and bounded by the bottom of the vessel, the plating or other bulkheads;
66. 'transverse bulkhead': a bulkhead extending from one side of the vessel to the other;
67. 'wall': a dividing surface, usually vertical;
68. 'partition wall': a non-watertight wall;
69. 'length (L)': the maximum length of the hull in m, excluding rudder and bowsprit;
70. 'length overall (L_{OA})': the maximum length of the craft in m, including all fixed installations such as parts of the steering system or power plant, mechanical or similar devices;
71. 'length of waterline (L_{WL})': the length of the hull in m, measured at the maximum draught;
72. 'breadth (B)': the maximum breadth of the hull in m, measured to the outer edge of the shell plating (excluding paddle wheels, rub rails, and similar);
73. 'breadth overall (B_{OA})': the maximum breadth of the craft in m, including all fixed equipment such as paddle wheels, rub rails, mechanical devices and the like;
74. 'breadth of waterline (B_{WL})': breadth of the hull in m, measured from the outside of the side plating at the maximum draught line;
75. 'height (H)': the shortest vertical distance in m between the lowest point of the hull or the keel and the lowest point of the deck on the side of the vessel;
76. 'draught (T)': the vertical distance in m between the lowest point of the hull or the keel and the maximum draught line;
77. 'forward perpendicular': the vertical line at the forward point of the intersection of the hull with the maximum draught line;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

78. 'clear width of side deck': the distance between the vertical line passing through the most prominent part of the hatch coaming on the side deck side and the vertical line passing through the inside edge of the slip guard (guard-rail, foot rail) on the outer side of the side deck;

Steering system

79. 'steering system': all the equipment necessary for steering the vessel, such as to ensure the manoeuvrability laid down in Chapter 5;
80. 'rudder': the rudder or rudders, with shaft, including the rudder quadrant and the components connecting with the steering apparatus;
81. 'steering apparatus': the part of the steering system which produces the movement of the rudder;
82. 'drive unit': the steering-apparatus drive, between the power source and the steering apparatus;
83. 'power source': the power supply to the steering drive unit and the steering apparatus produced by an on-board network, batteries or an internal combustion engine;
84. 'steering control': the component parts of and circuitry for the operation of a power-driven steering control;
85. 'steering apparatus drive unit': the control for the steering apparatus, its drive unit and its power source;
86. 'manual drive': a system whereby manual operation of the hand wheel moves the rudder by means of a mechanical transmission, without any additional power source;
87. 'manually-operated hydraulic drive': a manual control actuating a hydraulic transmission;
88. 'rate-of-turn regulator': equipment which automatically produces and maintains a given rate of turn of the vessel in accordance with preselected values;
89. 'wheelhouse designed for radar navigation by one person': a wheelhouse arranged in such a way that, during radar navigation, the vessel can be manoeuvred by one person;

Properties of structural components and materials

90. 'watertight': a structural component or device so fitted as to prevent any ingress of water;
91. 'spray-proof and weathertight': a structural component or device so fitted that in normal conditions it allows only a negligible quantity of water to penetrate;
92. 'gastight': a structural component or device so fitted as to prevent the ingress of gas and vapours;
93. 'non-combustible': a substance which neither burns nor produces flammable vapours in such quantities that they ignite spontaneously when heated to approximately 750°C;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 94. 'flame-retardant': material which does not readily catch fire, or whose surface at least restricts the spread of flames pursuant to the test procedure referred to in Article 15.11(1)(c);
- 95. 'fire-resistance': the property of structural components or devices as certified by the test procedure referred to in Article 15.11(1)(d);
- 96. 'Code for Fire Test Procedures': the International Code for the Application of Fire Test Procedures adopted under Resolution MSC.61(67) by the Maritime Safety Committee of the IMO;

Other definitions

- 97. 'approved classification society': a classification society which has been recognised in accordance with the criteria and the procedures of Annex VII;
- 98. 'radar installation': an electronic navigational aid for detecting and displaying the surroundings and traffic;
- 99. 'Inland ECDIS': a standardised system for displaying electronic navigational charts for inland waters and associated information, that displays selected information from proprietary electronic navigational charts for inland waters and optionally information from other sensors of the craft;
- 100. 'Inland ECDIS installation': an installation for displaying electronic navigational charts for inland waters that can be operated in two different modes: information mode and navigation mode;
- 101. 'information mode': use of Inland ECDIS for information purposes only without radar overlay;
- 102. 'navigation mode': use of Inland ECDIS with radar overlay for navigating a craft;
- 103. 'shipboard personnel': all employees on board a passenger vessel who are not members of the crew;
- 104. 'persons with reduced mobility': persons facing particular problems when using public transport, such as the elderly and the handicapped and persons with sensory disabilities, persons in wheelchairs, pregnant women and persons accompanying young children;
- 105. 'Community certificate': a certificate issued to an inland waterway vessel by the competent authority, signifying compliance with the technical requirements of this Directive.

Article 1.02

(Left void)

Article 1.03

(Left void)

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 1.04

(Left void)

Article 1.05

(Left void)

[^{F2} Article 1.06

Temporary requirements

Temporary requirements designed to amend non-essential elements of this Directive, by supplementing it, may be adopted, in accordance with the regulatory procedure with scrutiny referred to in Article 19(4) of this Directive, where it is found urgently necessary, for the purposes of adaptation to technical progress of inland waterway transport, to allow derogations from the provisions of this Directive or to allow tests. The requirements shall be published and shall be valid for a maximum of three years. They shall enter into force at the same time and shall be annulled under the same conditions in all Member States.]

Textual Amendments

- F2** Substituted by [Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006 amending Directive 2006/87/EC laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels \(2006/137/EC\)](#).

Article 1.07

Administrative instructions

In order to make the implementation of this Directive easier and uniform, binding administrative instructions for the inspection may be adopted in accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 19(2) of this Directive.

CHAPTER 2

PROCEDURE

Article 2.01

Inspection bodies

- 1 Inspection bodies shall be set up by the Member States.
- 2 Inspection bodies shall consist of a chairman and experts.

3 The Chairman and the experts within each body shall be designated by the authorities in the State in which the body is set up. On taking up their duties, the Chairman and the experts shall submit a written declaration that they will perform them completely independently. No declaration shall be required from officials.

4 Inspection bodies may be assisted by specialist experts in accordance with the national provisions applying.

Article 2.02

Request for an inspection

1 The procedure for making a request for an inspection and establishing the place and time of that inspection fall within the powers of the authorities issuing the Community certificate. The competent authority shall determine which documents are to be submitted. The procedure shall take place in such a way as to ensure that the inspection may be conducted within a reasonable period following the lodging of the request.

2 The owner of a craft that is not subject to this Directive, or his representative, may request a Community certificate. His request shall be met if the vessel fulfils the requirements of this Directive.

Article 2.03

Presentation of the craft for inspection

1 The owner, or his representative, shall present the craft in an unladen, cleaned and equipped state. He shall provide any assistance needed for the inspection, such as providing an appropriate dinghy and staff, and uncovering any parts of the hull or fittings that are not directly accessible or visible.

2 The inspection body shall demand a dry inspection on the first occasion. That dry inspection may be dispensed with if a classification certificate or a certificate from an approved classification society to the effect that the construction meets its requirements can be produced or if a certificate is produced which shows that a competent authority has already carried out a dry inspection for other purposes. Where there is a periodical inspection or an inspection, as provided for in Article 15 of this Directive, the inspection body may require an inspection out of the water.

3 The inspection body may require further operational tests and other supporting documents. That provision shall also apply during the building of the craft.

Article 2.04

(Left void)

Article 2.05

Provisional Community certificate

1 The competent authority may issue a provisional Community certificate:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The provisional Community certificate shall be drawn up using the model set out in Part III of Annex V where the navigability of the craft, floating establishment or floating object seems to have been adequately ensured.

Article 2.06

Validity of the Community certificate

1 The validity period of Community certificates issued to newly built vessels in accordance with the provisions of this Directive shall be determined by the competent authority up to a maximum of:

2 In the case of vessels already in operation before the inspection, the competent authority shall set the period of validity of the Community certificate case by case, in the light of the results of the inspection. However, the validity may not exceed the periods specified in paragraph 1.

Article 2.07

Particulars in and amendments to the Community certificate

1 The owner of a craft, or his representative, shall bring to the notice of the competent authority any change in the name or ownership of a craft, any remeasurement, and any change in the official number, registration or home port, and shall send the Community certificate to that authority for amendment.

2 Any competent authority may add any information or change to the Community certificate.

3 Where a competent authority adds any alteration or information to a Community certificate it shall inform the competent authority which issued the Community certificate thereof.

Article 2.08

(Left void)

Article 2.09

Periodical inspection

1 Craft shall be subjected to a periodical inspection before expiry of their Community certificate.

2 Following a justified request by the owner or his representative, the competent authority may, by way of an exception, and without any further inspections, grant an extension of the validity of the Community certificate for not more than six months. That extension shall be granted in writing and shall be kept on board the craft.

3 The competent authority shall again lay down the period of validity of the Community certificate in accordance with the results of that inspection.

4 If, rather than have its period of validity extended, a Community certificate is replaced by a new version, the earlier Community certificate shall be returned to the competent authority which issued it.

Article 2.10

Voluntary inspection

The owner of a craft, or his representative, may voluntarily request an inspection at any time.

That request for an inspection shall be acted upon.

Article 2.11

(Left void)

Article 2.12

(Left void)

Article 2.13

(Left void)

Article 2.14

(Left void)

Article 2.15

Expenses

The owner of a craft, or his representative, shall bear all of the costs arising from the inspection of the vessel and the issue of the Community certificate in accordance with a special set of charges drawn up by each of the Member States.

Article 2.16

Information

The competent authority may allow persons demonstrating a well-founded interest to be informed of the contents of a Community certificate and may issue those persons with extracts or copies of the Community certificates certified as true and designated as such.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 2.17

Register of Community certificates

1 Competent authorities shall assign an order number to the Community certificates they issue. They shall keep a register in accordance with the model set out in Annex VI of all the Community certificates they issue.

2 Competent authorities shall keep the original, or a copy of all the Community certificates they have issued, and shall enter on these any information and alterations, together with any Community certificate cancellations and replacements.

Article 2.18

Official number

1 The competent authority having issued a Community certificate shall enter on that Community certificate the official number assigned to that craft by the competent authority of the Member State in which the craft has been registered or has its home port.

2 (Left void)

3 (Left void)

4 The owner of a craft, or his representative, shall apply to the competent authorities for assignment of the official number. The owner or his representative shall also be responsible for affixing the official number entered in the Community certificate and removing it as soon as it is no longer valid.

Article 2.19

Equivalences and derogations

1 Where the provisions of Part II require the use, or presence, on board a craft of certain materials, installations or items of equipment, or the adoption of certain design aspects or certain arrangements, the competent authority may permit the use, or presence, on board the said craft of other materials, installations or items of equipment, or the adoption of other design features or other arrangements where, in accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 19(2) of this Directive, these are recognised to be equivalent.

2 If, in accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 19(2) of this Directive, the Committee reaches no decision on equivalence, as provided for in paragraph 1, the competent authority may issue a provisional Community certificate.

3 In accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 19(2) of this Directive, the competent authority may, on the basis of a recommendation by the Committee, issue a Community certificate for trial purposes and for a limited period to a specific craft incorporating new technical specifications that derogate from the requirements of Part II, provided those specifications offer equivalent safety.

4 The equivalences and derogations referred to in paragraphs 1 and 3 shall be entered in the Community certificate. The Commission shall be informed thereof.

PART II

CHAPTER 3

SHIPBUILDING REQUIREMENTS

Article 3.01

Basic requirements

Vessels shall be built in accordance with good shipbuilding practice.

Article 3.02

Strength and stability

1 The hull shall be sufficiently strong to withstand all of the stresses to which it is normally subjected.

2 Where a material other than steel is used for the construction of the hull, it shall be proved by calculation that the hull strength (longitudinal, lateral and local strength) equals at least the strength that would result from the use of steel under the assumption of minimum thickness in accordance with paragraph 1. If a certificate of class or a declaration issued by a recognised classification society is presented, a proof by calculation may be dispensed with.

3 The stability of vessels shall correspond to their intended use.

Article 3.03

Hull

1 Bulkheads rising up to the deck or, where there is no deck, up to the gunwale, shall be installed at the following points:

2 No accommodation or installations needed for vessel safety or operation may be located ahead of the plane of the collision bulkhead. This requirement shall not apply to anchor gear.

3 The accommodation, engine rooms and boiler rooms, and the workspaces forming part of these shall be separated from the holds by watertight transverse bulkheads that extend up to the deck.

4 The accommodation shall be separated from engine rooms, boiler rooms and holds in a gastight manner and shall be directly accessible from the deck. If no such access has been provided an emergency exit shall also lead directly to the deck.

5 The bulkheads specified in paragraphs 1 and 3 and the separation of areas specified in paragraph 4 shall not contain any openings.

6 The water inlets and discharges, and the pipework connected to these, shall be such that no unintentional ingress of water into the vessel is possible.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

7 The foresections of vessels shall be built in such a way that the anchors neither wholly nor partly protrude beyond the side plating.

Article 3.04

Engine and boiler rooms, bunkers

1 Engine or boiler rooms shall be arranged in such a way that the equipment therein can be operated, serviced and maintained easily and safely.

2 The liquid-fuel or lubricant bunkers and passenger areas and accommodation may not have any common surfaces which are under the static pressure of the liquid when in normal service.

3 Engine room, boiler room and bunker bulkheads, ceilings and doors shall be made of steel or another equivalent non-combustible material.

4 Engine and boiler rooms and other premises in which flammable or toxic gases are likely to escape shall be capable of being adequately ventilated.

5 Companionways and ladders providing access to engine and boiler rooms and bunkers shall be firmly attached and be made of steel or another shock-resistant and non-combustible material.

6 Engine and boiler rooms shall have two exits of which one may be an emergency exit.

7 The maximum permissible sound pressure level in the engine rooms shall be 110 dB(A). The measuring points shall be selected as a function of the maintenance work needed during normal operation of the plant located therein.

CHAPTER 4

SAFETY CLEARANCE, FREEBOARD AND DRAUGHT MARKS

Article 4.01

Safety clearance

1 The safety clearance shall be at least 300 mm.

2 The safety clearance in the case of vessels whose openings cannot be closed by spray-proof and weathertight devices, and for vessels sailing with their holds uncovered, shall be increased in such a way that each of those openings shall be at least 500 mm from the plane of maximum draught.

Article 4.02

Freeboard

1 The freeboard of vessels with a continuous deck, without sheer and superstructures, shall be 150 mm.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The freeboard of vessels with sheer and superstructures shall be calculated using the following formula:

3 The coefficient α is calculated using the following formula:

4 Coefficients β_v and β_a are calculated using the following formulae:

5 The effective aft/forward sheers Se_v/Se_a are calculated using the following formulae:

6 If $\beta_a \cdot Se_a$ is greater than $\beta_v \cdot Se_v$, the value $\beta_v \cdot Se_v$ of will be taken as being the value for $\beta_a \cdot Se_a$.

Article 4.03

Minimum freeboard

In view of the reductions referred to in Article 4.02 the minimum freeboard shall be not less than 0 mm.

Article 4.04

Draught marks

1 The plane of maximum draught shall be determined in such a way that the specifications concerning minimum freeboard and minimum safety clearance are both met. However, for safety reasons, the inspection body may lay down a greater value for the safety clearance or freeboard. The plane of maximum draught shall be determined at least for Zone 3.

2 The plane of maximum draught shall be indicated by means of highly visible, indelible draught marks.

3 The draught marks for Zone 3 shall consist of a rectangle 300 mm long and 40 mm deep, the base of which is horizontal and coincides with the plane of the maximum authorised draught. Any differing draught marks shall include such a rectangle.

4 Vessels shall have at least three pairs of draught marks, of which one pair shall be centrally located and the two others located, respectively, at a distance from the bow and stern that is equal to roughly one-sixth of the length.

5 Marks or indications which cease to be valid following a further inspection shall be deleted or marked as being no longer valid under the supervision of the inspection body. If a draught mark should disappear, it may only be replaced under the supervision of an inspection body.

6 Where a vessel has been measured in implementation of the 1966 Convention on the Measurement of Inland Navigation Vessels and the plane of the measurement marks meets the requirements of this Directive, those measurement marks shall take the place of the draught marks; this shall be mentioned in the Community certificate.

7 For vessels operating on zones of inland waterways other than Zone 3 (Zones 1, 2 or 4) the bow and stern pairs of draught marks provided for in paragraph 4 shall be supplemented by adding a vertical line to which one or, in the case of several zones, several additional draught lines 150 mm long shall be affixed towards the bow, in relation to the draught mark for Zone 3.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 4.05

Maximum loaded draught of vessels whose holds are not always closed so as to be spray-proof and weathertight

If the plane of maximum draught for Zone 3 of a vessel is determined by assuming that the holds may be closed in such a way as to make them spray-proof and weathertight, and if the distance between the plane of maximum draught and the upper edge of the coamings is less than 500 mm, the maximum draught for sailing with uncovered holds shall be determined.

The following statement shall be entered on the Community certificate:

Where the hold hatches are totally or partly uncovered the vessel may only be loaded up to ... mm below the draught marks for Zone 3.

Article 4.06

Draught scales

1 Vessels whose draught may exceed 1 m shall bear a draught scale on each of their sides towards the stern; they may bear additional draught scales.

2 The zero points on each draught scale shall be taken vertically to this within the plane running parallel to the plane of maximum draught passing through the lowest point of the hull or of the keel where such exists. The vertical distance above the zero point shall be graduated in decimetres. That graduation shall be located on each scale, from the unladen water line up to 100 mm above the maximum draught by means of punched or chiselled marks, and shall be painted in the form of a highly-visible band in two alternating colours. That graduation shall be identified by figures at a distance of every five decimetres marked next to the scale as well as at the top of the scale.

3 The two stern measurement scales affixed pursuant to the Convention referred to in Article 4.04 (6), may replace the draught scales, provided that they include a graduation that meets the requirements plus, where appropriate, figures indicating the draught.

CHAPTER 5

MANOEUVRABILITY

Article 5.01

General

Vessels and convoys shall display adequate navigability and manoeuvrability.

Unpowered vessels intended to be towed shall meet the specific requirements laid down by the inspection body.

Powered vessels and convoys shall meet the requirements set out in Articles 5.02 to 5.10.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 5.02

Navigation tests

- 1 Navigability and manoeuvrability shall be checked by means of navigation tests. Compliance with the requirements of Articles 5.06 to 5.10 shall, in particular, be examined.
- 2 The inspection body may dispense with all or part of the tests where compliance with the navigability and manoeuvrability requirements is proven in another manner.

Article 5.03

Test area

- 1 The navigation tests referred to in Article 5.02 shall be carried out on areas of inland waterways that have been designated by the competent authorities.
- 2 Those test areas shall be situated on a stretch of flowing or standing water that is if possible straight, at least 2 km long and sufficiently wide and is equipped with highly-distinctive marks for determining the position of the vessel.
- 3 It shall be possible for the inspection body to plot the hydrological data such as depth of water, width of navigable channel and average speed of the current in the navigation area as a function of the various water levels.

Article 5.04

Degree of loading of vessels and convoys during navigation tests

During navigation tests, vessels and convoys intended to carry goods shall be loaded to at least 70 % of their tonnage and loading, distributed in such a way as to ensure a horizontal attitude as far as possible. If the tests are carried out with a lesser load the approval for downstream navigation shall be restricted to that loading.

Article 5.05

Use of on-board facilities for navigation test

- 1 During the navigation test, all of the equipment referred to in items 34 and 52 of the Community certificate which may be actuated from the wheelhouse may be used, apart from anchors.
- 2 However, during the test involving turning into the current referred to in Article 5.10, bow anchors may be used.

Article 5.06

Prescribed (forward) speed

- 1 Vessels and convoys shall achieve a speed in relation to the water of at least 13 km/h. That condition is not mandatory where pusher tugs are operating solo.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The inspection body may grant exemptions to vessels and convoys operating solely in estuaries and ports.

3 The inspection body shall check if the unladen vessel is capable of exceeding a speed of 40 km/h in relation to water. If this can be confirmed, the following entry shall be made in item 52 of the Community certificate:

Article 5.07

Stopping capacity

1 Vessels and convoys shall be able to stop facing downstream in good time while remaining adequately manoeuvrable.

2 Where vessels and convoys are not longer than 86 m and not wider than 22.90 m the stopping capacity mentioned above may be replaced by turning capacity.

3 The stopping capacity shall be proved by means of stopping manoeuvres carried out within a test area as referred to in Article 5.03 and the turning capacity by turning manoeuvres in accordance with Article 5.10.

Article 5.08

Capacity for going astern

Where the stopping manoeuvre required by Article 5.07 is carried out in standing water it shall be followed by a navigation test while going astern.

Article 5.09

Capacity for taking evasive action

Vessels and convoys shall be able to take evasive action in good time. That capacity shall be proven by means of evasive manoeuvres carried out within a test area as referred to in Article 5.03.

Article 5.10

Turning capacity

Vessels and convoys not exceeding 86 m in length or 22,90 m in breadth shall be able to turn in good time.

That turning capacity may be replaced by the stopping capacity referred to in Article 5.07.

The turning capacity shall be proven by means of turning manoeuvres against the current.

CHAPTER 6

STEERING SYSTEM

Article 6.01

General requirements

- 1 Vessels shall be fitted with a reliable steering system which provides at least the manoeuvrability required by Chapter 5.
- 2 Powered steering systems shall be designed in such a way that the rudder cannot change position unintentionally.
- 3 The steering system as a whole shall be designed for permanent lists of up to 15° and ambient temperatures from — 20 °C to + 50 °C.
- 4 The component parts of the steering system shall be rugged enough to always be able to withstand the stresses to which they may be subjected during normal operation. No external forces applied to the rudder shall impair the operating capacity of the steering apparatus and its drive unit.
- 5 The steering system shall incorporate a powered drive unit if so required by the forces needed to actuate the rudder.
- 6 A steering apparatus with powered drive unit shall be protected against overloads by means of a system that restricts the torque applied by the drive unit.
- 7 The penetrations for the rudder stocks shall be so designed as to prevent the spread of water-polluting lubricants.

Article 6.02

Steering apparatus drive unit

- 1 If the steering apparatus has a powered drive unit, it shall be possible to bring a second independent drive unit, or manual drive, into use within five seconds if the steering apparatus drive unit fails or malfunctions.
- 2 If the second drive unit or manual drive is not placed in service automatically, it shall be possible to do so immediately by means of a single operation by the helmsman that is both simple and quick.
- 3 The second drive unit or manual drive shall ensure the manoeuvrability required by Chapter 5 as well.

Article 6.03

Hydraulic steering apparatus drive unit

- 1 No other power consumers may be connected to the hydraulic steering apparatus drive unit. Where there are two independent drive units, such a connection to one of the units is however acceptable if the consumers are connected to the return line and may be disconnected from the drive unit by means of an isolating device.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Where there are two hydraulic drive units, a separate hydraulic reservoir is needed for each of the two units. However, double reservoirs are acceptable. Hydraulic reservoirs shall be fitted with a warning system that monitors any drop in the oil level below the lowest content level needed for reliable operation.

3 The pilot valve does not have to be duplicated if this can be actuated manually or by manually-controlled hydraulic actuation from the wheelhouse.

4 The dimensions, design and arrangement of the pipework shall as far as possible exclude mechanical damage or damage resulting from fire.

5 As far as hydraulic drive units are concerned, no separate pipework system shall be required for the second unit if independent operation of the two units is guaranteed and if the pipework system is able to withstand a pressure of at least 1.5 times that of the maximum service pressure.

6 Flexible piping is only permitted where its use is essential in order to damp vibrations or to allow freedom of movement of components. It shall be designed for a pressure that is at least equal to the maximum service pressure.

Article 6.04

Power source

1 Steering systems fitted with two powered drive units shall have at least two power sources.

2 If the second power source for the powered steering apparatus is not constantly available while the vessel is under way, a buffer device carrying adequate capacity shall provide back-up during the period needed for start-up.

3 In the case of electrical power sources, no other power consumers may be supplied by the main power source for the steering system.

Article 6.05

Manual drive

1 The manual wheel shall not be driven by a powered drive unit.

2 Regardless of rudder position, a kick-back of the wheel shall be prevented when the manual drive is engaged automatically.

Article 6.06

Rudder-propeller, water-jet, cycloidal-propeller and bow-thruster systems

1 Where the thrust vectoring of rudder-propeller, water-jet, cycloidal-propeller or bow-thruster installations is remotely actuated by electric, hydraulic or pneumatic means, there shall be two actuation systems, each independent of the other, between the wheelhouse and the propeller- or thruster-installation which, *mutatis mutandis*, meet the requirements of Articles 6.01 to 6.05.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Where there are two or more rudder-propeller, water-jet or cycloidal-propeller installations that are independent of each other the second actuation system is not necessary if the vessel retains the manoeuvrability required by Chapter 5 if one of the systems fails.

Article 6.07

Indicators and monitoring devices

1 The rudder position shall be clearly displayed at the steering position. If the rudder-position indicator is electric it shall have its own power supply.

2 There shall be at least the following indicators and monitoring devices at the steering position:

Article 6.08

Rate-of-turn regulators

1 Rate-of-turn regulators and their components shall meet the requirements laid down in Article 9.20.

2 The proper functioning of the rate-of-turn regulator shall be displayed at the steering position by means of a green indicating light.

3 Where, in addition to the rate-of-turn regulator, there are other steering systems, it shall be possible to clearly distinguish at the steering position which of these systems has been activated. It shall be possible to shift from one system to another immediately. The rate-of-turn regulator shall not have any influence on these other steering systems.

4 The electricity supply to the rate-of-turn regulator shall be independent of other power consumers.

5 The gyroscopes, detectors and rate-of-turn indicators used in the rate-of-turn regulators shall meet the minimum requirements of the minimum specifications and test conditions concerning rate-of-turn displays for inland waterways, as laid down in Annex IX.

Article 6.09

Acceptance procedure

1 The compliance of the installed steering system shall be checked by an inspection body. It may, for this purpose, request the following documents:

2 Operation of the entire steering system shall be checked by means of a navigation test. If a rate-of-turn regulator is installed it shall be checked that a predetermined course can be reliably maintained and that bends can be negotiated safely.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

CHAPTER 7

WHEELHOUSE

Article 7.01

General

1 Wheelhouses shall be arranged in such a way that the helmsman may at all times perform his task while the vessel is under way.

2 Under normal operating conditions, sound pressure generated by the vessel and measured at the level of the helmsman's head at the steering position shall not exceed 70 dB(A).

3 Where a wheelhouse has been designed for radar navigation by one person, the helmsman shall be able to accomplish his task while seated and all of the display or monitoring instruments and all of the controls needed for operation of the vessel shall be arranged in such a way that the helmsman may use them comfortably while the vessel is under way without leaving his position or losing sight of the radar screen.

Article 7.02

Unobstructed view

1 There shall be an adequately unobstructed view in all directions from the steering position.

2 The area of obstructed vision for the helmsman ahead of the vessel in an unladen state with half of its supplies but without ballast shall not exceed two vessel lengths or 250 m, whichever is less, to the surface of the water over an arc from abeam on either side through right ahead of the vessel.

3 The helmsman's field of unobstructed vision at his normal position shall be at least 240° of the horizon and at least 140° within the forward semicircle.

4 The upper edge of the forward facing windows of the wheelhouse shall be high enough to allow a person at the steering position with height of eye of 1 800 mm a clear forward view to at least 10 degrees above the horizontal at eye-level height.

5 There shall in all weathers be suitable means of providing a clear view through the windscreen.

6 The glazing used in wheelhouses shall be made of safety glass and have a light transmission of at least 75 %.

Article 7.03

General requirements concerning control, indicating and monitoring equipment

1 Control equipment needed to operate the vessel shall be brought into its operating position easily. That position shall be unambiguously clear.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Monitoring instruments shall be easily legible. It shall be possible to adjust their lighting steplessly down to their extinction. Light sources shall be neither intrusive nor impair the legibility of the monitoring instruments.

3 There shall be a system for testing the warning and indicating lights.

4 It shall be possible to clearly establish whether a system is in operation. If its functioning is indicated by means of an indicating light, this shall be green.

5 Any malfunctioning or failure of systems that require monitoring shall be indicated by means of red warning lights.

6 An audible warning shall sound at the same time that a red warning light lights up. Audible warnings may be given by a single, collective signal. The sound pressure level of that signal shall exceed the maximum sound pressure level of the ambient noise at the steering position by at least 3 dB(A).

7 The audible warning shall be capable of being switched off after a malfunction or failure has been acknowledged. Such shutdown shall not prevent the alarm signal from being triggered by other malfunctions. The red warning lights shall only go out when the malfunction has been corrected.

8 The monitoring and indicating devices shall be automatically switched to an alternative power supply if their own power supply fails.

Article 7.04

Specific requirements concerning control, indicating and monitoring equipment of main engines and steering system

1 It shall be possible to control and monitor the main engines and steering systems from the steering position. Main engines fitted with a clutch which can be actuated from the steering position, or driving a controllable pitch propeller which can be controlled from the steering position, need only to be capable of being started up and shut down from the engine room.

2 The control for each main engine shall take the form of a single lever which prescribes an arc within a vertical plane that is approximately parallel to the longitudinal axis of the vessel. Movement of that lever towards the bow of the vessel shall cause forward motion, whereas movement of the lever towards the stern shall cause the vessel to go astern. Clutch engagement and reversal of the direction of motion shall take place about the neutral position of that lever. The lever shall catch in the neutral position.

3 The direction of the propulsion thrust imparted to the vessel and the rotational speed of the propeller or main engines shall be displayed inside wheelhouses that have been designed for radar navigation by one person.

4 The indicating and monitoring devices required by Article 6.07(2), Article 8.03(2), and Article 8.05 (13), shall be located at the steering position.

5 Vessels with wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person shall be steered by means of a lever. It shall be possible to move that lever easily by hand. The position of the lever in relation to the longitudinal axis of the vessel shall correspond precisely to the position of the rudder blades. It shall be possible to release hold of the lever in any given position without that of the rudder blades changing. The neutral position of the lever shall be clearly perceptible.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

6 Where the vessel is fitted with bow rudders or special rudders, particularly for going astern, these shall be actuated in wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person by special levers which, *mutatis mutandis*, meet the requirements set out in paragraph 5.

7 Where rate-of-turn regulators are used, it shall be possible for the rate-of-turn control to be released in any given position without altering the speed selected.

8 The remote-control equipment for the entire steering system shall be installed in a permanent manner and be arranged in such a way that the course selected is clearly visible. If the remote control equipment can be disengaged, it shall be equipped with an indicating device displaying the respective operational conditions 'in service' or 'out of service'. The disposition and manipulation of the controls shall be functional.

9 In the case of rudder-propeller, water-jet, cycloidal-propeller and bow-thruster systems, equivalent devices shall be acceptable as control, indicating and monitoring devices.

Article 7.05

Navigation lights, light signals and sound signals

1 In this Article the term:

2 Current indicating lights or other equivalent devices, such as repeater lights, for monitoring the navigation lights shall be installed in the wheelhouse unless that monitoring can be performed direct from the wheelhouse.

3 In wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person, repeater lights shall be installed on the control panel in order to monitor the navigation lights and the light signals. Switches of navigation lights shall be included in the repeater lights or be adjacent to these and shall be clearly assigned to them.

4 In wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person it shall be possible to activate the sound signals by a foot operated switch. That requirement shall not apply to the 'do not approach' signal in accordance with the applicable navigational authority regulations of the Member States.

5 Navigation lights shall meet the requirements set out in Annex IX, Part I.

Article 7.06

Radar installations and rate-of-turn indicators

1 The radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicators shall be of a type that has been approved by the competent authority. The requirements concerning installation and operational testing of radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicators, as laid down in Annex IX, shall be met. Inland ECDIS equipment which can be operated in navigation mode shall be regarded as radar equipment. In addition the requirements of the Inland ECDIS standard shall be met.

2 In wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 7.07

Radio telephony systems for vessels with wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person

1 Where vessel wheelhouses have been designed for radar navigation by one person, reception from the vessel-vessel networks and that of nautical information shall be via a loudspeaker, and outgoing communications via a fixed microphone. Send/receive shall be selected by means of a push-button.

2 Where vessel wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person are equipped with a radio telephone system for the public correspondence network, reception shall be possible from the helmsman's seat.

Article 7.08

Internal communication facilities on board

There shall be internal communication facilities on board vessels with a wheelhouse designed for radar navigation by one person.

It shall be possible to establish communication links from the steering position:

- (a) with the bow of the vessel or convoy;
- (b) with the stern of the vessel or convoy if no direct communication is possible from the steering position;
- (c) with the crew accommodation;
- (d) with the boatmaster's cabin.

Reception at all positions of these internal communication links shall be via loudspeaker, and transmission shall be via a fixed microphone. The link with the bow and stern of the vessel or convoy may be of the radio-telephone type.

Article 7.09

Alarm system

1 There shall be an independent alarm system enabling the accommodation, engine rooms and, where appropriate, the separate pump rooms to be reached.

2 The helmsman shall have within reach an on/off switch controlling the alarm signal; switches which automatically return to the off position when released are not acceptable.

3 The sound pressure level for the alarm signal shall be at least 75 dB(A) within the accommodation area.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 7.10

Heating and ventilation

Wheelhouses shall be equipped with an effective heating and ventilation system that can be regulated.

Article 7.11

Stern-anchor operating equipment

On board vessels and convoys whose wheelhouse has been designed for radar navigation by one person and exceeding 86 m in length or 22,90 m in breadth it shall be possible for the helmsman to drop the stern anchors from his position.

Article 7.12

Retractable wheelhouses

Retractable wheelhouses shall be fitted with an emergency lowering system.

All lowering operations shall automatically trigger a clearly audible acoustic warning signal. That requirement shall not apply if the risk of injury which may result from the lowering is prevented by appropriate design features.

It shall be possible to leave the wheelhouse safely whatever its position.

Article 7.13

Entry in the Community certificate for vessels with wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person

Where a vessel complies with the special provisions for wheelhouses designed for radar navigation by one person as set out in Articles 7.01, 7.04 to 7.08 and 7.11, the following entry shall be made in the Community certificate:

The vessel has a wheelhouse designed for radar navigation by one person.

CHAPTER 8

ENGINE DESIGN

Article 8.01

General

1 Engines and their ancillaries shall be designed, built and installed in accordance with best practice.

2 Installations requiring regular inspection, particularly steam boilers, other pressure vessels and their accessories, and lifts, shall meet the regulations applying in one of the Member States of the Community.

3 Only internal-combustion engines burning fuels having a flashpoint of more than 55 °C may be installed.

Article 8.02

Safety equipment

1 Engines shall be installed and fitted in such a way as to be adequately accessible for operation and maintenance and shall not endanger the persons assigned to those tasks. It shall be possible to make them secure against unintentional starting.

2 Main engines, auxiliaries, boilers and pressure vessels, and their accessories, shall be fitted with safety devices.

3 In case of emergency, it shall also be possible to shut down the motors driving the blower and suction fans from outside the space in which they are located, and from outside the engine room.

4 Where necessary, connections of pipes which carry fuel oil, lubricating oil, and oils used in power transmission systems, control and activating systems and heating systems shall be screened or otherwise suitably protected to avoid oil spray or leakages onto hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition. The number of connections in such piping systems shall be kept to a minimum.

5 External high pressure fuel delivery pipes of diesel engines, between the high pressure fuel pumps and fuel injectors, shall be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing fuel from a high pressure pipe failure. The jacketed piping system shall include a means for collection of leakages and arrangements shall be provided for an alarm to be given of a fuel pipe failure, except that an alarm is not required for engines with no more than two cylinders. Jacketed piping systems need not be applied to engines on open decks operating windlasses and capstans.

6 Insulation of engine parts shall meet the requirements of Article 3.04(3), second paragraph.

Article 8.03

Power plant

1 It shall be possible to start, stop or reverse the ship's propulsion reliably and quickly.

2 The following shall be monitored by suitable devices which trigger an alarm once a critical level has been reached:

3 Where vessels have only one main engine, that engine shall not be shut down automatically except in order to protect against overspeed.

4 Where vessels have only one main engine, that engine may be equipped with an automatic device for the reduction of the engine speed only if an automatic reduction of the engine speed is indicated both optically and acoustically in the wheelhouse and the device for the reduction of the engine speed can be switched off from the helmsman's position.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

5 Shaft bushings shall be designed in such a way as to prevent the spread of water-polluting lubricants.

Article 8.04

Engine exhaust system

- 1 The exhaust gases shall be completely ducted out of the vessel.
- 2 All suitable measures shall be taken to avoid ingress of the exhaust gases into the various compartments. Exhaust pipes passing through accommodation or the wheelhouse shall, within these, be covered by protective gas-tight sheathing. The gap between the exhaust pipe and this sheathing shall be open to the outside air.
- 3 The exhaust pipes shall be arranged and protected in such a way that they cannot cause a fire.
- 4 The exhaust pipes shall be suitably insulated or cooled in the engine rooms. Protection against physical contact may suffice outside the engine rooms.

Article 8.05

Fuel tanks, pipes and accessories

- 1 Liquid fuels shall be stored in steel tanks which are either an integral part of the hull or which are firmly attached to the hull. If so required by the design of the vessel, an equivalent material in terms of fire-resistance may be used. These requirements shall not apply to tanks having a capacity of no more than 12 litres that have been incorporated in auxiliaries during their manufacture. Fuel tanks shall not have common partitions with drinking-water tanks.
- 2 Tanks and their pipework and other accessories shall be laid out and arranged in such a way that neither fuel nor fuel vapours may accidentally reach the inside of the vessel. Tank valves intended for fuel sampling or water drainage shall close automatically.
- 3 No fuel tanks may be located forward of the collision bulkhead.
- 4 Fuel tanks and their fittings shall not be located directly above engines or exhaust pipes.
- 5 The filler orifices for fuel tanks shall be marked distinctly.
- 6 The orifice for the fuel tank filler necks shall be on the deck, except for the daily-supply tanks. The filler neck shall be fitted with a connection piece in accordance with European standard EN 12827:1999.
- 7 Directly at tank outlets the pipework for the distribution of fuels shall be fitted with a shutoff device that can be operated from the deck
- 8 Fuel pipes, their connections, seals and fittings shall be made of materials that are able to withstand the mechanical, chemical and thermal stresses to which they are likely to be subjected. The fuel pipes shall not be subjected to any adverse influence of heat and it shall be possible to inspect them throughout their length.
- 9 Fuel tanks shall be provided with a suitable capacity-gauging device. Capacity-gauging devices shall be legible right up to the maximum filling level. Glass gauges shall be

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

effectively protected against impacts, shall be fitted with an automatic closing device at their base and their upper end shall be connected to the tanks above their maximum filling level. The material used for glass gauges shall not deform under normal ambient temperatures. Sounding pipes shall not terminate in accommodation spaces. Sounding pipes terminating in an engine or boiler room shall be fitted with suitable self-closing devices.

10

11 If fuel tanks are fitted with an automatic shut-off device, the sensors shall stop fuelling when the tank is 97 % full; this equipment shall meet the 'failsafe' requirements.

12 Fuel tanks shall be provided with openings having leak-proof closures that are intended to permit cleaning and inspection.

13 Fuel tanks directly supplying the main engines and engines needed for safe operation of the vessel shall be fitted with a device emitting both visual and audible signals in the wheelhouse if their level of filling is not sufficient to ensure further safe operation.

Article 8.06

Storage of lubricating oil, pipes and accessories

1 Lubricating oil shall be stored in steel tanks which are either an integral part of the hull or which are firmly attached to the hull. If so required by the design of the vessel, an equivalent material in terms of fire-resistance may be used. These requirements shall not apply to tanks having a capacity of no more than 25 litres. Lubricating oil tanks shall not have common partitions with drinking-water tanks.

2 Lubricating oil tanks and their pipework and other accessories shall be laid out and arranged in such a way that neither lubricating oil nor lubricating oil vapour may accidentally reach the inside of the vessel.

3 No lubricating oil tanks may be located forward of the collision bulkhead.

4 Lubricating oil tanks and their fittings shall not be located directly above engines or exhaust pipes.

5 The filler orifices for lubricating oil tanks shall be marked distinctly.

6 Lubricating oil pipes, their connections, seals and fittings shall be made of materials that are able to withstand the mechanical, chemical and thermal stresses to which they are likely to be subjected. The pipes shall not be subjected to any adverse influence of heat and it shall be possible to inspect them throughout their length.

7 Lubricating oil tanks shall be provided with a suitable capacity-gauging device. Capacity-gauging devices shall be legible right up to the maximum filling level. Glass gauges shall be effectively protected against impacts, shall be fitted with an automatic closing device at their base and their upper end shall be connected to the tanks above their maximum filling level. The material used for glass gauges shall not deform under normal ambient temperatures. Sounding pipes shall not terminate in accommodation spaces. Sounding pipes terminating in an engine or boiler room shall be fitted with suitable self-closing devices.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 8.07

Storage of oils used in power transmission systems, control and activating systems and heating systems, pipes and accessories

1 Oils used in power transmission systems, control and activating systems and heating systems shall be stored in steel tanks which are either an integral part of the hull or which are firmly attached to the hull. If so required by the design of the vessel, an equivalent material in terms of fire-resistance may be used. These requirements shall not apply to tanks having a capacity of no more than 25 litres. Such oil tanks shall not have common partitions with drinking-water tanks.

2 Such oil tanks and their pipework and other accessories shall be laid out and arranged in such a way that neither such oil nor such oil vapour may accidentally reach the inside of the vessel.

3 No such oil tanks may be located forward of the collision bulkhead.

4 Such oil tanks and their fittings shall not be located directly above engines or exhaust pipes.

5 The filler orifices for such oil tanks shall be marked distinctly.

6 Such oil pipes, their connections, seals and fittings shall be made of materials that are able to withstand the mechanical, chemical and thermal stresses to which they are likely to be subjected. The pipes shall not be subjected to any adverse influence of heat and it shall be possible to inspect them throughout their length.

7 Such oil tanks shall be provided with a suitable capacity-gauging device. Capacity-gauging devices shall be legible right up to the maximum filling level. Glass gauges shall be effectively protected against impacts, shall be fitted with an automatic closing device at their base and their upper end shall be connected to the tanks above their maximum filling level. The material used for glass gauges shall not deform under normal ambient temperatures. Sounding pipes shall not terminate in accommodation spaces. Sounding pipes terminating in an engine or boiler room shall be fitted with suitable self-closing devices.

Article 8.08

Bilge pumping and drainage systems

1 It shall be possible to pump out each watertight compartment separately. However, that requirement shall not apply to watertight compartments that are normally sealed hermetically during operation.

2 Vessels requiring a crew shall be equipped with two independent bilge pumps which shall not be installed within the same space. At least one of these shall be motor driven. However, for vessels with a power of less than 225 kW or with a deadweight of less than 350 t, or where vessels not intended for the carriage of goods have a displacement of less than 250 m³, one pump will suffice which can be either manually-operated or motor-driven.

3 The minimum pumping capacity Q_1 of the first bilge pump shall be calculated using the following formula:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 4 Where the bilge pumps are connected to a drainage system the drainage pipes shall have an internal diameter of at least d_1 , in mm, and the branch pipes an internal diameter of at least d_2 , in mm.
- 5 Only self-priming bilge pumps are permitted.
- 6 There shall be at least one suction on both the starboard and port sides of all flat-bottomed, drainable compartments that are wider than 5 m.
- 7 It may be possible to drain the aft peak via the main engine room by means of an easily accessible, automatically closable fitting.
- 8 Branch pipes of single compartments shall be connected to the main drainage pipe by means of a lockable non-return valve.
- 9 Hold bilges shall be fitted with gauging devices.
- 10 Where a drainage system incorporates permanently installed pipework the bilge-bottom drainage pipes intended to extract oily water shall be equipped with closures that have been sealed in position by an inspection body. The number and position of those closures shall be entered on the Community certificate.
- 11 Locking the closures in position shall be regarded as equivalent to sealing in accordance with paragraph 10. The key or keys for the locking of the closures shall be indicated accordingly and kept in a marked and easily accessible location in the engine room.

Article 8.09

Oily water and used oil stores

- 1 It shall be possible to store, on board, oily water accumulated during operation. The engine-room bilge is considered to be a store for this purpose.
- 2 In order to store used oils there shall, in the engine room, be one or several specific receptacles whose capacity corresponds to at least 1,5 times the quantity of the used oils from the sumps of all of the internal combustion engines and transmissions installed, together with the hydraulic fluids from the hydraulic-fluid tanks.
- 3 Where vessels are only used on short-haul operation the inspection body may grant exceptions from the requirements of paragraph 2.

Article 8.10

Noise emitted by vessels

- 1 The noise produced by a vessel under way, and in particular the engine air intake and exhaust noises, shall be damped by using appropriate means.
- 2 The noise generated by a vessel under way shall not exceed 75 dB(A) at a lateral distance of 25 m from the ship's side.
- 3 Apart from transshipment operations the noise generated by a stationary vessel shall not exceed 65 dB(A) at a lateral distance of 25 m from the ship's side.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

CHAPTER 9

ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Article 9.01

General

- 1 Where there are no specific requirements concerning certain parts of an installation the safety level shall be considered satisfactory where those parts have been produced in accordance with a European standard in force or in accordance with the requirements of an approved classification society.
- 2 Documents containing the following, and duly stamped by the inspection body, shall be kept on board:
- 3 The equipment shall be designed for permanent lists of up to 15° and ambient inside temperatures of between 0 and + 40 °C, and on the deck between - 20 °C and + 40 °C. It shall function perfectly within those limits.
- 4 The electrical and electronic equipment and appliances shall be fully accessible and easy to maintain.

Article 9.02

Electricity supply systems

- 1 Where craft are fitted with an electrical system, that system shall in principle have at least two power sources in such a way that where one power source fails the remaining source is able to supply the power consumers needed for safe navigation for at least 30 minutes.
- 2 Adequate rating of the power supply shall be demonstrated by means of a power balance. An appropriate simultaneity factor may be taken into account.
- 3 Independently of paragraph 1, Article 6.04 shall apply to the power source for the steering system (rudder installations).

Article 9.03

Protection against physical contact, intrusion of solid objects and the ingress of water

The type of minimum protection for permanently installed parts of an installation shall be as set out in the following table:

Location	Type of minimum protection(in accordance with IEC publ. 60529: 1992)
a	Where appliances release large amounts of heat: IP 12.
b	Where appliances or panels do not have this type of protection their location shall meet the conditions applying to that type of protection.
c	Electrical equipment of the certified safety type as in accordance with <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) European standards EN 50014: 1997; 50015: 1998; 50016: 2002; 50017: 1998; 50018: 2000; 50019: 2000 and 50020: 2002; or (b) IEC publication 60079 as of 1 October 2003.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	Generators	Motors	Trans- formers	Panels	Distribution fittings	Switches	Lighting equipment
Operation rooms, engine rooms, steering-gear compartments	IP 22	IP 22	IP ^b 22	IP ^{ab} 22	IP 44		IP 22
Holds					IP 55		IP 55
Battery and paint lockers							IP 44 u. (Ex) ^c
Free decks and open steering positions		IP 55		IP 55	IP 55		IP 55
Wheelhouse		IP 22	IP 22	IP 22	IP 22		IP 22
Accommodation apart from sanitary facilities and washrooms				IP 22	IP 20		IP 20
Sanitary facilities and washrooms		IP 44	IP 44	IP 44	IP 55		IP 44

a Where appliances release large amounts of heat: IP 12.

b Where appliances or panels do not have this type of protection their location shall meet the conditions applying to that type of protection.

c Electrical equipment of the certified safety type as in accordance with

(a) European standards EN 50014: 1997; 50015: 1998; 50016: 2002; 50017: 1998; 50018: 2000; 50019: 2000 and 50020: 2002;

or

(b) IEC publication 60079 as of 1 October 2003.

Article 9.04

Protection from explosion

Only explosion-proof electrical equipment (certified safety) may be installed in spaces where potentially explosive gases or mixtures of gases are likely to accumulate, such as compartments dedicated for accumulators or the storage of highly inflammable products. No light switches or switches for other electrical appliances shall be installed in these spaces. The protection from explosion shall take account of the characteristics of the potentially explosive gases or mixtures of gases that are likely to arise (explosion-potential group, temperature class).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 9.05

Earthing

- 1 Systems under a voltage of more than 50 V need to be earthed.
- 2 Metal parts that are open to physical contact and which, during normal operation, are not electrically live, such as engine frames and casings, appliances and lighting equipment, shall be earthed separately where they are not in electrical contact with the hull as a result of their installation.
- 3 The casings of mobile power consumers and portable devices shall, during normal use, be earthed by means of an additional earthing conductor that is incorporated into the power cable.
- 4 The cross-sections of the earthing conductors shall be not less than given in the following table:

Article 9.06

Maximum permissible voltages

- 1 The following voltages shall not be exceeded:
- 2 By way of derogation from paragraph 1, if the necessary protective measures are applied higher voltages shall be acceptable:

Article 9.07

Distribution systems

- 1 The following distribution systems are allowed for direct current and single-phase alternating current:
- 2 The following distribution systems are allowed for three-phase alternating current:
- 3 The inspection body may allow the use of other systems.

Article 9.08

Connection to shore or other external networks

- 1 Incoming supply lines from shore networks or other external networks to the installations of the onboard network shall have a permanent connection on board in the form of fixed terminals or fixed plug sockets. The cable connections shall not be subjected to any pulling load.
- 2 The hull shall be capable of being earthed effectively when the connection voltage exceeds 50 V. The earthing connection shall be specially marked.
- 3 The switching devices for the connection shall be arranged such as to prevent the concurrent operation of the onboard network generators and the shore network or another

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

external network. A brief period of concurrent operation shall be permitted when changing from one system to another without a break in voltage.

- 4 The connection shall be protected against short circuiting and overload.
- 5 The main switchboard shall indicate whether the connection is live.
- 6 Indicator devices shall be installed to enable comparison of polarity in the case of direct current and phase sequence in the case of three-phase alternating current, between the connection and the onboard network.
- 7 A panel adjacent to the connection shall indicate:

Article 9.09

Power supply to other craft

- 1 When power is supplied to other craft, a separate connection shall be used. If power sockets rated at more than 16 A are used to supply current to other craft, devices (such as switches or interlocks) shall be provided to ensure that connection and disconnection can take place only when the line is dead.
- 2 Cable connections shall not be subjected to any pulling load.
- 3 Article 9.08, paragraphs 3 to 7, shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

Article 9.10

Generators and motors

- 1 Generators, motors and their terminal boxes shall be accessible for inspections, measurements and repairs. The type of protection shall correspond to their location (see Article 9.03).
- 2 Generators driven by the main engine, the propeller shaft or by an auxiliary set intended for other purposes shall be designed with respect to the range of rotational speeds which can occur during normal operation.

Article 9.11

Accumulators

- 1 Accumulators shall be accessible and so arranged as not to shift due to movements of the craft. They shall not be placed where they will be exposed to excessive heat, extreme cold, spray, steam or vapour.
- 2 Accumulators requiring a charging power of more than 2,0 kW (calculated on the basis of the maximum charging current and the nominal voltage of the accumulator and taking into account the characteristic charging curve of the charging appliance) shall be installed in a special room. If placed on deck enclosing them in a cabinet will suffice.
- 3 The interior surfaces of all rooms, cabinets or boxes, shelving or other built-in features intended for accumulators shall be protected against the harmful effects of electrolytes.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

4 Provision shall be made for effective ventilation when accumulators are installed in a closed compartment, cabinet or chest. Forced-draught ventilation shall be provided for nickel-cadmium accumulators requiring a charging power of more than 2 kW and for lead-acid accumulators requiring more than 3 kW.

5 The required air throughput (Q) shall be calculated using the following formula:

6 Where natural ventilation is used the cross-section of the ducts shall be sufficient for the required air throughput on the basis of an air-flow velocity of 0,5 m/section. However, the cross-section shall be at least 80 cm² for lead-acid accumulators and 120 cm² for nickel-cadmium accumulators.

7 Where forced-draught ventilation is used a fan shall be provided, preferably of the suction type, whose motor shall be clear of the gas or air stream.

8 'Fire, naked flame and smoking prohibited' signs according to Figure 2 of Appendix I having a minimum diameter of 10 cm shall be affixed to the doors or covers of compartments, cabinets and chests containing accumulators.

Article 9.12

Switchgear installations

- 1 Electrical switchboards
- 2 Switches, protective devices
- 3 Measuring and monitoring devices
- 4 Location of electrical switchboards

Article 9.13

Emergency circuit breakers

Emergency circuit breakers for oil burners, fuel pumps, fuel separators and engine-room ventilators shall be installed centrally outside the spaces containing the equipment.

Article 9.14

Installation fittings

- 1 Cable entries shall be sized as a function of the cables to be connected and be appropriate to the types of cable used.
- 2 Sockets for distribution circuits at different voltages or frequencies shall be impossible to confuse.
- 3 Switches shall simultaneously switch all non-earthed conductors within a circuit. However, single-pole switches within non-earthed circuitry shall be permitted in accommodation-lighting circuits apart from in laundries, bathrooms, washrooms and other rooms with wet facilities.

4 Where amperage exceeds 16 A it shall be possible to lock the sockets by means of a switch in such a way that the plug can only be inserted and withdrawn with the power switched off.

Article 9.15

Cables

1 Cables shall be flame-retardant, self-extinguishing and resistant to water and oil.

2 Conductors of cables used for power and lighting circuits shall have a minimum cross-section of 1,5 mm².

3 Metal armouring, shielding and sheathing of cables shall not, under normal operating conditions, be used as conductors or for earthing.

4 Metal shielding and sheathing of cables in power and lighting installations shall be earthed at least at one end.

5 The cross-section of conductors shall take account of their maximum permissible end-temperature (current-carrying capacity) and of the permissible voltage drop. The voltage drop between the main switchboard and the least favourable point of the installation shall not be more than 5 % for lighting or more than 7 % for power or heating circuits, referred to the nominal voltage.

6 Cables shall be protected against mechanical damage.

7 The means of fixing the cables shall ensure that any pulling load remains within the permissible limits.

8 When cables pass through bulkheads or decks, the mechanical strength, watertightness and fire resistance of these bulkheads and decks shall not be affected by the penetrations.

9 Terminations and joints in all conductors shall be so made as to retain the original electrical, mechanical, flame-retardant and, where necessary, fire resistant properties.

10 Cables connected to retractable wheelhouses shall be sufficiently flexible and shall have insulation with sufficient flexibility down to — 20 °C and resistance to steam and vapour, ultraviolet rays and ozone.

Article 9.16

Lighting installations

1 Lighting appliances shall be so installed that the heat they emit cannot set fire to nearby inflammable objects or components.

2 Lighting appliances on open decks shall be so installed as not to impede the recognition of navigation lights.

3 When two or more lighting appliances are installed in an engine room or boiler room, they shall be supplied by at least two different circuits. This requirement shall also apply to spaces where cooling machinery, hydraulic machinery, or electric motors are installed.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 9.17

Navigation lights

- 1 Switchboards for navigation lights shall be installed in the wheelhouse. They shall be supplied by a separate feeder from the main switchboard or by two independent secondary distributions.
- 2 Navigation lights shall be supplied, protected and switched separately from the navigation lights switchboard.
- 3 No fault in the monitoring installation, as provided for in Article 7.05(2), shall affect the operation of the light which it monitors.
- 4 Several lights forming a functional unit and installed together at the same point may be jointly supplied, switched and monitored. The monitoring installation shall be capable of identifying the failure of any one of these lights. However, it shall not be possible to use both light sources in a double light (two lights mounted one above the other or in the same housing) simultaneously.

Article 9.18

(Left void)

Article 9.19

Alarm and safety systems for mechanical equipment

The alarm and safety systems for monitoring and protecting mechanical equipment shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Alarm systems

The alarm systems shall be so designed that no failure in the alarm system can result in failure of the apparatus or installation being monitored.

Binary transmitters shall be designed on the quiescent-current principle or on the monitored load-current principle.

Visual alarms shall remain visible until the fault has been remedied; an alarm that has been acknowledged shall be distinguishable from an alarm that has not yet been acknowledged. Each alarm shall also comprise an audible warning. It shall be possible to switch off acoustic alarms. Switching off one acoustic alarm shall not prevent another signal from being set off by another cause.

Exceptions can be permitted in the case of alarm systems comprising less than five measurement points.

(b) Safety systems

Safety systems shall be designed to halt or slow down the operation of the affected equipment, or to warn a permanently-manned station to do so before a critical state is reached.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Binary transmitters shall be designed according to the load-current principle.

If safety systems are not designed to be self-monitoring it shall be possible to check that they are operating correctly.

Safety systems shall be independent of other systems.

Article 9.20

Electronic equipment

- 1 General
- 2 Test conditions

Article 9.21

Electromagnetic compatibility

The operation of the electric and electronic systems shall not be impaired by electromagnetic interference. General measures shall, with equal importance, extend to:

- (a) disconnection of the transmission paths between the source of interference and affected devices;
- (b) reducing the causes of disturbance at their source;
- (c) reducing the sensitivity of affected devices to interference.

CHAPTER 10

EQUIPMENT

Article 10.01

Anchor equipment

1 Vessels intended for the carriage of goods, apart from ship-borne lighters whose length L does not exceed 40m, shall be equipped with bow anchors whose total mass P is obtained using the following formula:

2 Passenger vessels and vessels not intended for the carriage of goods, apart from pushers, shall be fitted with bow anchors whose total mass P is obtained using the following formula:

3 Vessels referred to in paragraph 1 whose maximum length does not exceed 86 m shall be equipped with stern anchors whose total mass is equal to 25 % of mass P.

4 Vessels intended to propel rigid convoys which do not exceed 86 m in length shall be equipped with stern anchors whose total mass is equal to 25 % of maximum mass P calculated in accordance with paragraph 1 for the formations (considered to be a nautical unit) permitted and entered in the Community certificate.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

5 The anchor masses established in accordance with paragraphs 1 to 4 may be reduced for certain special anchors.

6 The total mass P specified for bow anchors may be distributed between one or two anchors. It may be reduced by 15 % where the vessel is equipped with only a single bow anchor and the hawse pipe is located amidships.

7 Cast iron anchors shall not be permitted.

8 On anchors their mass shall be indicated in characters which stand out in relief in a durable manner.

9 Anchors having a mass in excess of 50 kg shall be equipped with windlasses.

10 Each bow anchor chain shall have a minimum length of:

11 The minimum tensile strength R of the anchor chains shall be calculated using the following formulae:

12 In cases where heavier anchors with correspondingly stronger anchor chains are aboard, only the minimum masses and minimum tensile strengths required according to paragraphs 1 to 6 and 11 shall be entered in the Community certificate.

13 Connecting pieces (swivels) between anchor and chain shall withstand a tensile load 20 % higher than the tensile strength of the corresponding chain.

14 The use of cables instead of anchor chains is permitted. The cables shall have the same tensile strength as that required for chains, but shall be 20 % longer.

Article 10.02

Other equipment

1 According to the applicable navigational authority regulations in force in the Member States, at least the following equipment shall be on board:

2 In addition, the equipment shall include at least:

3 There shall be an embarkation stairway or ladder on vessels whose side height above the unladen waterline exceeds 1,50 m.

Article 10.03

Portable fire extinguishers

1 There shall be at least one portable fire extinguisher in accordance with European standard EN 3:1996 at each of the following places:

2 For the portable fire extinguishers required by paragraph 1, only powder-type extinguishers with a content of at least 6 kg or other portable fire extinguishers with the same extinguishing capacity may be used. They shall be suitable for Class A, B and C fires and for fires in electrical systems of up to 1000 V.

3 In addition powder, water or foam fire extinguishers may be used which are suitable at least for the class of fire most likely to occur in the room for which they are intended.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

4 Portable fire extinguishers with CO₂ as the extinguishing agent may be used only for extinguishing fires in galleys and electrical installations. The content of these fire extinguishers shall be no more than 1 kg per 15 m³ of the room in which they are made available for use.

5 Portable fire extinguishers shall be checked at least every two years. An inspection certificate shall be issued, signed by the inspector and showing the date of inspection.

6 If portable fire extinguishers are installed in such a way that they are out of sight the panel covering them shall be identified by a symbol for fire extinguishers as shown in Figure 3 of Appendix I, and having a side length of at least 10 cm.

Article 10.03a

Permanently installed fire-fighting systems in accommodation spaces, wheelhouses and passenger spaces

1 Fire protection in accommodation spaces, wheelhouses and passenger spaces is to be provided only by suitable automatic pressurised water sprinklers as permanently installed fire-fighting systems.

2 Installation or conversion of the systems shall be carried out only by specialised firms.

3 The systems shall be made of steel or equivalent non-combustible materials.

4 The systems shall be able to spray water at a rate of at least 5 l/m² per minute over the area of the largest room to be protected.

[^{F25} Systems spraying smaller quantities of water shall have a type-approval pursuant to IMO Resolution A 800(19) or another recognised standard. Such recognitions, when designed to amend non-essential elements of this Directive, shall be adopted in accordance with the regulatory procedure with scrutiny referred to in Article 19(3) of this Directive. Type-approval shall be carried out by an approved classification society or an accredited testing institution. The accredited testing institution shall comply with the European standard for general requirements for the competence of testing and calibrating laboratories (EN ISO/IEC 17025: 2000).]

6 The systems shall be checked by an expert:

7 When carrying out the check in accordance with paragraph 6, the expert shall verify whether the systems meet the requirements of this paragraph.

8 An inspection certificate, signed by the inspector, shall be issued, showing the date of inspection.

9 The number of installed systems shall be entered in the Community certificate.

10 For protecting objects in accommodation spaces, wheelhouses and passenger spaces, permanently installed fire-fighting systems shall be permissible only on the basis of recommendations from the Committee.

Textual Amendments

F2 Substituted by [Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006 amending Directive 2006/87/EC laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels \(2006/137/EC\)](#).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 10.03b

Permanently installed fire-fighting systems in engine rooms, boiler rooms and pump rooms

- [^{F2}1] Extinguishing agents
- 2 Ventilation, air intake
- 3 Fire alarm system
- 4 Piping system
- 5 Triggering device
- 6 Warning system
- 7 Pressure tanks, fittings and pressure pipes
- 8 Quantity of extinguishing agent
- 9 Installation, inspection and documentation
- 10 CO₂ fire-fighting systems
- 11 HFC-227ea — fire-fighting systems
- 12 IG-541 — fire-fighting systems
- 13 Fire-fighting systems for protecting objects

Textual Amendments

- F2** Substituted by [Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006 amending Directive 2006/87/EC laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels \(2006/137/EC\)](#).

Article 10.04

Ship's boats

- 1 The following craft shall carry a ship's boat according to European standard EN 1914: 1997:
- 2 It shall be possible for one person to launch such ship's boats safely within five minutes from the first manual action necessary. If a powered launching device is used this shall be such that safe, quick launching shall not be impaired if its power supply fails.
- 3 Inflatable ship's boats shall be inspected according to manufacturer's instructions.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 10.05

Lifebuoys and lifejackets

1 On board craft there shall be at least three lifebuoys in accordance with European standard EN 14144: 2002. They shall be ready for use and attached to the deck at appropriate points without being attached to their mounting. At least one lifebuoy shall be in the immediate vicinity of the wheelhouse and shall be equipped with a self-igniting, battery-powered light that will not be extinguished in water.

2 A personalised, automatically inflatable lifejacket in accordance with European standards EN 395: 1998 or EN 396: 1998 shall be within reach of every person who is regularly on board a craft.

3 Lifejackets shall be inspected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

CHAPTER 11

SAFETY AT WORK STATIONS

Article 11.01

General

1 Vessels shall be built, arranged and equipped in such a way as to enable persons to work and move about in safety.

2 Permanently installed facilities that are necessary for working on board shall be arranged, laid out and secured in such a way as to permit safe and easy operation, use and maintenance. If necessary, mobile or high-temperature components shall be fitted with protective devices.

Article 11.02

Protection against falling

1 Decks and side decks shall be flat and at no point be likely to cause tripping; it shall be impossible for puddles to form.

2 Decks, side decks, engine-room floors, landings, stairways and the tops of side deck bollards shall have non-slip surfaces.

3 The tops of side deck bollards and obstacles in passageways, such as the edges of steps, shall be painted in a colour contrasting with the surrounding deck.

4 The outer edges of decks, as well as work stations where persons might fall more than 1 m, shall be fitted with bulwarks or coamings that are at least 0,70 m high or with a guard rail in accordance with European standard EN 711:1995, which shall comprise a handrail, a rail at knee height and a foot-rail. Side decks shall be fitted with a foot-rail and a continuous handrail that is secured to the coaming. Coaming handrails shall not be required where side decks are fitted with non-retractable shipside guard rails.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

5 At work stations where there is danger of falling more than 1 m the inspection body may require appropriate fittings and equipment to ensure safe working.

Article 11.03

Dimensions of working spaces

Working spaces shall be large enough to provide every person working in them with adequate freedom of movement.

Article 11.04

Side decks

1 The clear width of a side deck shall be at least 0,60 m. That figure may be reduced to 0,50 m at certain points that are necessary for the operation of the vessel such as deck-washing valves. It may be reduced to 0,40 m at bollards and cleats.

2 Up to a height of 0,90 m above the side deck, the clear width of the side deck may be reduced to 0,54 m provided that the clear width above, between the outer edge of the hull and the inner edge of the hold, is not less than 0,65 m. In this case, the clear width of the side deck may be reduced to 0,50 m if the outer edge of the side deck is fitted with a guard rail in accordance with European standard EN 711:1995 to prevent falling. On vessels 55 m or less in length with only aft accommodation, the guard rail may be dispensed with.

3 The requirements of paragraphs 1 and 2 shall apply up to a height of 2,00 m above the side deck.

Article 11.05

Access to working spaces

1 Points of access and passageways for the movement of persons and objects shall be of sufficient size and so arranged that:

2 Doors shall be so arranged that they can be opened and closed safely from either side. They shall be protected against accidental opening or closing.

3 Appropriate stairs, ladders or steps shall be installed in accesses, exits and passageways where there is more than a 0,50 m difference in floor level.

4 Working spaces which are manned continuously shall be fitted with stairs if there is a difference in floor level of more than 1,00 m. This requirement shall not apply to emergency exits.

5 Vessels with holds shall have at least one permanently installed means of access at each end of each hold.

Article 11.06

Exits and emergency exits

1 The number, arrangement and dimensions of exits, including emergency exits, shall be in keeping with the purpose and dimensions of the relevant space. Where one of the exits is an emergency exit, it shall be clearly marked as such.

2 Emergency exits or windows or the covers of skylights to be used as emergency exits shall have a clear opening of not less than 0,36 m², and the smallest dimension shall be not less than 0,50 m.

Article 11.07

Ladders, steps and similar devices

1 Stairs and ladders shall be securely fixed. Stairs shall be not less than 0,60 m wide and the clear width between handrails shall be not less than 0,60 m; steps shall be not less than 0,15 m deep; steps shall have non-slip surfaces and stairs with more than three steps shall be fitted with handrails.

2 Ladders and separately attached rungs shall have a clear width of not less than 0,30 m; rungs shall be not more than 0,30 m apart and the distance between rungs and structures shall be not less than 0,15 m.

3 Ladders and separately attached rungs shall be clearly recognisable from above and shall be equipped with safety handles above exit openings.

4 Movable ladders shall be at least 0,40 m wide, and at least 0,50 m wide at the base; it shall be possible to ensure that they will not topple or skid; the rungs shall be securely fixed in the uprights.

Article 11.08

Interior spaces

1 The dimensions, arrangement and layout of interior working spaces shall be in keeping with the work to be carried out and shall meet the health and safety requirements. They shall be equipped with sufficient non-dazzle lighting and with sufficient ventilation arrangements. If necessary, they shall be fitted with heating appliances capable of maintaining an adequate temperature.

2 The floors of interior working spaces shall be solid and durable, and shall be designed not to cause tripping or slipping. Openings in decks and floors shall, when open, be secured against the danger of falling, and windows and skylights shall be so arranged and fitted that they can be operated and cleaned safely.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 11.09

Protection against noise and vibration

- 1 Working spaces shall be so situated, equipped and designed that crew members are not exposed to harmful vibrations.
- 2 Permanent working spaces shall, in addition, be so constructed and soundproofed that the health and safety of crew members are not affected by noise.
- 3 For crew members who are likely to be exposed to noise levels exceeding 85 dB(A) every day individual acoustic protection devices shall be available. In working spaces where noise levels exceed 90 dB(A) it shall be indicated that wearing of acoustic protection devices is mandatory by a symbol 'Wear acoustic protection device' with a diameter of at least 10 cm in accordance with Figure 7 of Appendix I.

Article 11.10

Hatch covers

- 1 Hatch covers shall be easily accessible and safe to handle. Hatch-cover components weighing more than 40 kg shall be designed to slide or pivot or be fitted with mechanical opening devices. Hatch covers operated by lifting gear shall be fitted with adequate and easily accessible attachment devices. Non-interchangeable hatch covers and upper sills shall be clearly marked to show the hatches to which they belong and their correct position on those hatches.
- 2 Hatch covers shall be secured against being tilted by the wind or by loading gear. Sliding covers shall be fitted with catches to prevent accidental horizontal movement of more than 0,40 m; they shall be capable of being locked in their final position. Appropriate devices shall be fitted to hold stacked hatch covers in position.
- 3 The power supply for mechanically operated hatch covers shall be cut off automatically when the control switch is released.
- 4 Hatch covers shall be capable of bearing the loads to which they are likely to be subjected: Hatch covers designed to be walked on shall be capable of bearing concentrated loads of at least 75 kg. Hatch covers not designed to be walked on shall be marked as such. Hatch covers designed to receive deck cargo shall have the permissible load in t/m² marked on them. Where supports are needed to achieve the maximum permissible load this shall be indicated in an appropriate place; in this case the relevant drawings shall be kept on board.

Article 11.11

Winches

- 1 Winches shall be designed in such a way as to enable work to be carried out safely. They shall be fitted with devices that prevent unintentional load release. Winches that do not lock automatically shall be fitted with a brake that is adequate to deal with their tractive force.
- 2 Hand-operated winches shall be fitted with devices to prevent kickback of the crank. Winches that are both power- and manually driven shall be designed in such a way that the motive-power control cannot actuate the manual control.

Article 11.12

Cranes

1 Cranes shall be built in accordance with best practice. The forces arising during their operation shall be safely transmitted into the vessel's structure; they shall not impair its stability.

2 A manufacturer's plate containing the following information shall be affixed to cranes:

3 The maximum permissible loadings shall be permanently marked in a clearly legible manner on cranes.

4 There shall be devices to protect against crushing or shearing accidents. The outer parts of the crane shall leave a safety clearance of 0,5 m upwards, downwards and to the sides, between them and all surrounding objects. The safety clearance to the sides shall not be required outside work stations and passageways.

5 It shall be possible to protect power driven cranes against unauthorised use. It shall only be possible to start these up from the crane's driving position. The control shall be of the automatic-return type (buttons without stops); their operating direction shall be unambiguously clear.

6 Before putting into service for the first time or before putting back into service following major alteration, calculations and a load test shall provide proof of adequate strength and stability.

7 Cranes shall be checked regularly and in any case at least every 12 months, by an expert. During that inspection the safe working condition of the crane shall be determined by a visual check and an operating check.

8 Every 10 years, at the latest, after the acceptance test the crane shall again be inspected by an expert recognised by the inspection body.

9 Cranes with a safe working load exceeding 2 000 kg, or which are used for transhipment of cargo, or which are mounted on board lifting jacks, pontoons and other floating equipment or worksite craft shall in addition meet the requirements of one of the Member States.

10 For all cranes at least the following documents shall be kept on board:

Article 11.13

Storing flammable liquids

To store flammable liquids with a flash point of less than 55°C there shall be a ventilated cupboard made of non-combustible material on deck. On its outside there shall be a symbol 'Fire, naked flame and smoking prohibited' with a diameter of at least 10 cm in accordance with Figure 2 of Appendix I.

CHAPTER 12

ACCOMMODATION

Article 12.01

General

- 1 Vessels shall have accommodation for the persons lodging habitually on board, and at least for the minimum crew.
- 2 Accommodation shall be so designed, arranged and fitted out as to meet the health, safety and comfort needs of those on board. It shall be of safe and easy access and adequately insulated against heat and cold.
- 3 The inspection body may authorise exceptions to the provisions of this Chapter if the health and safety of those on board are ensured by other means.
- 4 The inspection body shall enter on the Community certificate any restrictions on the vessel's daily operating periods and its operating mode resulting from the exceptions referred to in paragraph 3.

Article 12.02

Special design requirements for accommodation

- 1 It shall be possible to ventilate accommodation adequately even when the doors are closed; in addition, communal living quarters shall receive adequate daylight and, as far as possible, provide a view out.
- 2 Where there is no deck-level access to the accommodation and the difference in level is 0,30 m or more the accommodation shall be accessible by means of stairs.
- 3 In the foresection of the vessel no floor shall be more than 1,20 m below the plane of maximum draught.
- 4 Living and sleeping quarters shall have at least two exits which are as far apart from each other as possible and which serve as escape routes. One exit may be designed as an emergency exit. This does not apply to rooms with an exit leading directly onto the deck or into a corridor which serves as an escape route, provided the corridor has two exits apart from each other leading to port and starboard. Emergency exits, which may include skylights and windows, shall have a clear opening of at least 0,36 m² and a shortest side no less than 0,50 m and permit rapid evacuation in an emergency. Insulation and cladding of escape routes shall be made of flame-retardant materials and the usability of escape routes shall be guaranteed at all times by appropriate means such as ladders or separately attached rungs.
- 5 Accommodation shall be protected against inadmissible noise and vibration. Sound pressure levels shall not exceed:
- 6 Headroom in the accommodation shall be not less than 2,00 m.
- 7 As a general rule, vessels shall have at least one communal living room partitioned off from the sleeping quarters.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

8 The free floor area of communal living quarters shall be not less than 2 m² per person, and in any event not less than 8 m² in total (not counting furniture, except tables and chairs).

9 The cubic capacity of private living and sleeping rooms shall be not less than 7 m³ each.

10 The volume of airspace per person shall be at least 3,5 m³ in private living quarters. In sleeping quarters it shall be at least 5 m³ for the first occupant and at least 3 m³ for each additional occupant (not counting volume of furniture). Sleeping cabins shall, as far as possible, be intended for no more than two persons. Berths shall be not less than 0,30 m above the floor. Where one berth is placed over another, the headroom above each berth shall be not less than 0,60 m.

11 Doors shall have an opening whose upper edge is at least 1,90 m above deck or above the floor and a clear width of at least 0,60 m. The prescribed height may be achieved by means of sliding or hinged covers or flaps. Doors shall open to the outside and it shall be possible to open them from either side. Sills shall not be more than 0,40 m high, but shall nonetheless comply with the provisions of other safety regulations.

12 Stairways shall be permanently fixed and safely negotiable. They shall be deemed to be so when:

13 Pipes carrying dangerous gases or liquids, and particularly those under such a high pressure that a leak could pose a danger to persons, shall not be located in the accommodation or in corridors leading to the accommodation. This does not apply to steam pipes and hydraulic system pipes, provided they are fitted in metal sleeves, and for the pipes of liquefied gas installations for domestic purposes.

Article 12.03

Sanitary installations

1 At least the following sanitary installations shall be provided in vessels with accommodation:

2 The sanitary installations shall be in close proximity to the accommodation. Toilets shall not have direct access to galleys, mess rooms or combined communal living quarters/galleys.

3 Toilet compartments shall have a floor space of at least 1 m², not less than 0,75 m wide and not less than 1,10 m long. Toilet compartments in cabins for no more than two persons may be smaller. Where a toilet contains a wash basin and/or shower, the floor space shall be increased at least by the floor space occupied by the wash basin and/or shower (or bath).

Article 12.04

Galleys

1 Galleys may be combined with communal living quarters.

2 Galleys shall comprise:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

3 The eating area of combined galleys/communal living quarters shall be large enough to accommodate the number of crew normally using it at the same time. Seats shall be not less than 0,60 m wide.

Article 12.05

Potable water

1 Vessels with accommodation shall have a potable water installation. Potable water tank filling apertures and potable water hoses shall be marked as being intended exclusively for potable water. Potable water filler necks shall be installed above the deck.

2 Potable water installations shall:

3 In addition to paragraph 2, potable water tanks shall:

4 Potable water tanks shall not share walls with other tanks. Potable water pipes shall not pass through tanks containing other liquids. Connections are not permitted between the potable water supply system and other pipes. Pipes carrying gas or liquids other than potable water shall not pass through potable water tanks.

5 Potable water pressure vessels shall operate only on uncontaminated compressed air. Where it is produced by means of compressors, appropriate air filters and oil separators shall be installed directly in front of the pressure vessel unless the water and the air are separated by a diaphragm.

Article 12.06

Heating and ventilation

1 It shall be possible to heat accommodation in accordance with its intended use. Heating installations shall be appropriate for the weather conditions which may arise.

2 It shall be possible to ventilate the living and sleeping quarters adequately even when the doors are closed. Ventilation shall ensure adequate air circulation in all climatic conditions.

3 The accommodation shall be so designed and arranged as to prevent as far as possible the entry of foul air from other areas of the vessel such as engine rooms or holds; where forced-air ventilation is used, the intake vents shall be so placed as to satisfy the above requirements.

Article 12.07

Other accommodation installations

1 Each crew member living on board shall have an individual berth and an individual clothes locker fitted with a lock. The internal measurements of the berth shall be not less than 2,00 × 0,90 m.

2 Suitable places for storing and drying work clothes shall be provided, but not in the sleeping quarters.

3 All accommodation areas shall be fitted with electric lighting. Additional lamps using gas or liquid fuel may only be used in communal living quarters. Lighting devices using

liquid fuel shall be made of metal and shall burn only fuels with a flash point above 55 °C or commercial paraffin oil. They shall be placed or attached so as not to constitute a fire hazard.

CHAPTER 13

FUEL-FIRED HEATING, COOKING AND REFRIGERATING EQUIPMENT

Article 13.01

General

- 1 Heating, cooking and refrigeration equipment running on liquefied gas shall meet the requirements of Chapter 14.
- 2 Heating, cooking and refrigeration equipment, together with its accessories, shall be so designed and installed that it is not dangerous even in the event of overheating. It shall be so installed that it cannot overturn or be moved accidentally.
- 3 The equipment referred to in paragraph 2 shall not be installed in areas in which substances with a flash point below 55 °C are used or stored. No flues from these installations may pass through such areas.
- 4 The supply of air necessary for combustion shall be ensured.
- 5 Heating appliances shall be securely connected to flues, which shall be fitted with suitable cowls or devices affording protection against the wind. They shall be arranged in such a manner as to permit cleaning.

Article 13.02

Use of liquid fuels, oil-fired equipment

- 1 Heating, cooking and refrigeration equipment which uses liquid fuel may be operated only with fuels whose flash point is above 55 °C.
- 2 By way of derogation from paragraph 1, cooking appliances and heating and refrigeration appliances fitted with burners with wicks and running on commercial paraffin oil may be permitted in the accommodation and wheelhouse provided the capacity of the fuel tank does not exceed 12 litres.
- 3 Appliances fitted with burners with wicks shall be:

Article 13.03

Vaporising oil burner stoves and atomising oil burner heating appliances

- 1 Vaporising oil burner stoves and atomising oil burner heating appliances shall be built in accordance with best practice.
- 2 Where a vaporising oil burner stove or an atomising oil burner heating appliance is installed in an engine room, the air supply to the heating appliance and the engines shall be so designed that the heating appliance and the engines can operate properly and safely independently of one another. Where necessary, there shall be a separate air supply. The

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

equipment shall be installed in such a way that no flame from the burner can reach other parts of the engine room installations.

Article 13.04

Vaporising oil burner stoves

1 It shall be possible to light vaporising oil burner stoves without the aid of another combustible liquid. They shall be fixed above a metal drip pan which encompasses all the fuel-carrying parts, whose sides are at least 20 mm high and which has a capacity of at least two litres.

2 For vaporising oil burner stoves installed in an engine room, the sides of the metal drip pan prescribed in paragraph 1 shall be at least 200 mm high. The lower edge of the vaporising burner shall be located above the edge of the drip pan. In addition, the upper edge of the drip pan shall extend at least 100 mm above the floor.

3 Vaporising oil burner stoves shall be fitted with a suitable regulator which, at all settings, ensures a virtually constant flow of fuel to the burner and which prevents any fuel leak should the flame go out. Regulators shall be considered suitable which function properly even when exposed to vibration and inclined up to 12° and which, in addition to a level-regulating float, have

4 Where the fuel tank of a vaporising oil burner stove is installed separately:

5 The flues of vaporising oil burner stoves shall be fitted with a device to prevent draught inversion.

Article 13.05

Atomising oil burner heating appliances

Atomising oil burner heating appliances shall in particular meet the following requirements:

- (a) adequate ventilation of the burner shall be ensured before the fuel is supplied;
- (b) the fuel supply shall be regulated by a thermostat;
- (c) the fuel shall be ignited by an electric device or by a pilot flame;
- (d) a flame monitoring device shall cut off the fuel supply when the flame goes out;
- (e) the main switch shall be placed at an easily accessible point outside the installation room.

Article 13.06

Forced-air heating appliances

Forced-air heating appliances consisting of a combustion chamber around which the heating air is conducted under pressure to a distribution system or to a room shall meet the following requirements:

- (a) if the fuel is atomised under pressure the combustion air shall be supplied by a blower;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- (b) the combustion chamber shall be well ventilated before the burner can be lit. Ventilation may be considered complete when the combustion air blower continues to operate after the flame has gone out;
- (c) the fuel supply shall be automatically cut off if:
 - the fire goes out;
 - the supply of combustion air is not sufficient;
 - the heated air exceeds a previously set temperature, or
 - the power supply of the safety devices fails.In the above cases the fuel supply shall not be re-established automatically after being cut off;
- (d) it shall be possible to switch off the combustion air and heating air blowers from outside the room where the heating appliance is located;
- (e) where heating air is drawn from outside, the intake vents shall be located as far as possible above the deck. They shall be installed in such a manner that rain and spray water cannot enter;
- (f) heating air pipes shall be made of metal;
- (g) it shall not be possible to close the heating air outlet apertures completely;
- (h) it shall not be possible for any leaking fuel to reach the heating air pipes;
- (i) it shall not be possible for forced-air heating appliances to draw their heating air from an engine room.

Article 13.07

Solid fuel heating

- 1 Solid fuel heating appliances shall be placed on a metal plate with raised edges such that no burning fuel or hot cinders fall outside the plate.
- 2 Solid fuel boilers shall be fitted with thermostatic controls to regulate the flow of combustion air.
- 3 A means by which cinders can be quickly doused shall be placed in the vicinity of each heating appliance.

CHAPTER 14

LIQUEFIED GAS INSTALLATIONS FOR DOMESTIC PURPOSES

Article 14.01

General

- 1 Liquefied gas installations consist essentially of a supply unit comprising one or more gas receptacles, and of one or more pressure regulators, a distribution system and a number of gas-consuming appliances.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 2 Installations may be operated only with commercial propane.

Article 14.02

Installations

- 1 Liquefied gas installations shall be suitable throughout for use with propane and shall be built and installed in accordance with best practice.
- 2 Liquefied gas installations may be used only for domestic purposes in the accommodation and the wheelhouse, and for corresponding purposes on passenger vessels.
- 3 There may be a number of separate installations on board. A single installation shall not be used to serve accommodation areas separated by a hold or a fixed tank.
- 4 No part of a liquefied gas installation shall be located in the engine room.

Article 14.03

Receptacles

- 1 Only receptacles with an approved content of between 5 and 35 kg are permitted. In the case of passenger vessels, the inspection body may approve the use of receptacles with a larger content.
- 2 Receptacles shall bear the official stamp certifying that they have been accepted following the required tests.

Article 14.04

Location and arrangement of supply units

- 1 Supply units shall be installed on deck in a freestanding or wall cupboard located outside the accommodation in a position such that it does not interfere with movement on board. They shall not, however, be installed against the fore or aft bulwark. The cupboard may be a wall cupboard set into the superstructure provided that it is gastight and can only be opened from outside the superstructure. It shall be so located that the distribution pipes leading to the gas consumption points are as short as possible.
- 2 Supply units shall be so installed that any leaking gas can escape from the cupboard into the open without any risk of it penetrating inside the vessel or coming into contact with a source of ignition.
- 3 Cupboards shall be constructed of flame-retardant materials and shall be sufficiently ventilated by apertures in the top and bottom. Receptacles shall be placed upright in the cupboards in such a way that they cannot overturn.
- 4 Cupboards shall be so built and placed that the temperature of the receptacles cannot exceed 50 °C.
- 5 The words 'Liquefied gas' and a 'Fire, naked flame and smoking prohibited' symbol at least 10 cm in diameter in accordance with Figure 2 of Appendix I shall be affixed to the outer wall of the cupboard.

Article 14.05

Spare and empty receptacles

Spare and empty receptacles not located in the supply unit shall be stored outside the accommodation and the wheelhouse in a cupboard built in accordance with Article 14.04.

Article 14.06

Pressure regulators

1 Gas-consuming appliances may be connected to receptacles only through a distribution system fitted with one or more pressure regulators to bring the gas pressure down to the utilisation pressure. The pressure may be reduced in one or two stages. All pressure regulators shall be set permanently at a pressure determined in accordance with Article 14.07.

2 The final pressure regulators shall be either fitted with or immediately followed by a device to protect the pipe automatically against excess pressure in the event of a malfunctioning of the pressure regulator. It shall be ensured that in the event of a leak in the protection device any leaking gas can escape into the open without any risk of it penetrating inside the vessel or coming into contact with a source of ignition; if necessary, a special pipe shall be fitted for this purpose.

3 The protection devices and vents shall be protected against the entry of water.

Article 14.07

Pressure

1 Where two-stage regulating systems are used, the mean pressure shall be not more than 2,5 bar above atmospheric pressure.

2 The pressure at the outlet from the last pressure regulator shall be not more than 0,05 bar above atmospheric pressure, with a tolerance of 10 %.

Article 14.08

Piping and flexible tubes

1 Pipes shall consist of permanently installed steel or copper tubing.

2 Pipes shall be able to withstand any stresses, in particular regarding corrosion and strength, which may occur under normal operating conditions on board and their characteristics and layout shall be such that they ensure a satisfactory flow of gas at the appropriate pressure to the gas-consuming appliances.

3 Pipes shall have as few joints as possible. Both pipes and joints shall be gastight and shall remain gastight despite any vibration or expansion to which they may be subjected.

4 Pipes shall be readily accessible, properly fixed and protected at every point where they might be subject to impact or friction, particularly where they pass through steel bulkheads or metal walls. The entire surface of steel pipes shall be treated against corrosion.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

5 Flexible pipes and their joints shall be able to withstand any stresses which may occur under normal operating conditions on board. They shall be installed in such a way that they are free of tension, cannot be heated excessively and can be inspected over their entire length.

Article 14.09

Distribution system

1 It shall be possible to shut off the entire distribution system by means of a main valve which is at all times easily and rapidly accessible.

2 Each gas-consuming appliance shall be supplied by a separate branch of the distribution system, and each branch shall be controlled by a separate closing device.

3 Valves shall be fitted at points where they are protected from the weather and from impact.

4 An inspection connection shall be fitted after each pressure regulator. It shall be ensured using a closing device that in pressure tests the pressure regulator is not exposed to the test pressure.

Article 14.10

Gas-consuming appliances and their installation

1 The only appliances that may be installed are propane-consuming appliances approved in one of the Member States and equipped with devices that effectively prevent the escape of gas in the event of either the flame or the pilot light being extinguished.

2 Appliances shall be so placed and connected that they cannot overturn or be accidentally moved and any risk of accidental wrenching of the connecting pipes is avoided.

3 Heating and water-heating appliances and refrigerators shall be connected to a flue for evacuating combustion gases into the open air.

4 The installation of gas-consuming appliances in the wheelhouse is permitted only if the wheelhouse is so constructed that no leaking gas can escape into the lower parts of the craft, in particular through the penetrations for control lines to the engine room.

5 Gas-consuming appliances may be installed in sleeping quarters only if combustion is independent of ambient air in the quarters.

6 Gas-consuming appliances in which combustion depends on ambient air shall be installed in rooms which are sufficiently large.

Article 14.11

Ventilation and evacuation of combustion gases

1 In rooms containing gas-consuming appliances in which combustion depends on ambient air, fresh air shall be supplied and combustion gases evacuated by means of ventilation apertures of adequate dimensions, with a clear section of at least 150 cm² per aperture.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Ventilation apertures shall not have any closing device and shall not lead to sleeping quarters.

3 Evacuation devices shall be so designed as to ensure the safe evacuation of combustion gases. They shall be reliable in operation and made of non-combustible materials. Their operation shall not be affected by forced ventilation.

Article 14.12

Operating and safety requirements

An operating instruction shall be affixed on board in a suitable place. It shall contain at least the following:

The valves of receptacles not connected to the distribution system shall be closed, even if the receptacles are presumed empty;

Flexible pipes shall be replaced as soon as their condition so requires;

All gas-consuming appliances shall be connected or the corresponding connecting pipes shall be sealed.

Article 14.13

Acceptance test

Before a liquefied gas installation is put into service, after any modification or repair and on every renewal of the attestation referred to in Article 14.15, the entire installation shall be accepted by an expert recognised by the inspection body. During the acceptance test the expert shall verify whether the installation conforms to the requirements of this Chapter. He shall submit an acceptance report to the inspection body.

Article 14.14

Tests

Tests on the installation shall be carried out under the following conditions:

1. Medium-pressure pipes between the closing device, referred to in Article 14.09 (4), of the first pressure regulator and the valves fitted before the final pressure regulator:
 - (a) pressure test, carried out with air, an inert gas or a liquid at a pressure 20 bar above atmospheric pressure;
 - (b) tightness test, carried out with air or an inert gas at a pressure 3,5 bar above atmospheric pressure.
2. Pipes at the service pressure between the closing device, referred to in Article 14.09(4), of the only pressure regulator or the final pressure regulator and the valves fitted before the gas-consuming appliances:

tightness test, carried out with air or an inert gas at a pressure of 1 bar above atmospheric pressure.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

3. Pipes situated between the closing device, referred to in Article 14.09 (4), of the only pressure regulator or the final pressure regulator and the controls of gas-consuming appliances:
tightness test at a pressure of 0,15 bar above atmospheric pressure.
4. In the tests referred to in paragraphs 1(b), 2 and 3, the pipes are deemed gastight if, after sufficient time to allow for equalisation with ambient temperature, no decrease in the test pressure is observed during a further 10 minute test period.
5. Receptacle connectors, pipe joints and other fittings subjected to the pressure in the receptacles, and joints between pressure regulators and the distribution pipe:
tightness test, carried out with a foaming substance, at the service pressure.
6. All gas-consuming appliances shall be brought into service at the nominal capacity and shall be tested for satisfactory and undisturbed combustion at different capacity settings.
Flame failure devices shall be checked to ensure that they operate satisfactorily.
7. After the test referred to in paragraph 6, it shall be verified for each gas-consuming appliance connected to a flue, whether, after five minutes' operation at the nominal capacity, with windows and doors closed and the ventilation devices in operation, any combustion gases are escaping into the room through the air intake.
If there is a more than momentary escape of such gases, the cause shall immediately be detected and remedied. The appliance shall not be approved for use until all defects have been eliminated.

Article 14.15

Attestation

- 1 The Community certificate shall include an attestation to the effect that all liquefied gas installations conform to the requirements of this Chapter.
- 2 The attestation will be issued by the inspection body following the acceptance test referred to in Article 14.13.
- 3 The attestation shall be valid for a period not exceeding three years. It may be renewed only after a further acceptance test carried out in accordance with Article 14.13.

CHAPTER 15

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO PASSENGER VESSELS

Article 15.01

General provisions

- 1 The following provisions shall not apply:
- 2 The following items of equipment are prohibited on passenger vessels:
- 3 Vessels without their own power cannot be licensed for passenger transport.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

4 On passenger vessels, areas shall be provided for use by persons with reduced mobility, according to the provisions of this Chapter. If the application of provisions of this Chapter which take into account the specific safety needs of persons with reduced mobility is difficult in practice or incurs unreasonable costs, the inspection body may allow derogations from these provisions on the basis of recommendations in accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 19(2) of this Directive. These derogations shall be mentioned in the Community certificate.

Article 15.02

Vessels' hulls

1 In the course of the inspections referred to in Article 2.09, the thickness of the outside plating of steel passenger vessels shall be determined as follows:

2 The number and position of bulkheads shall be selected such that, in the event of flooding, the vessel remains buoyant according to Article 15.03(7) to (13). Every portion of the internal structure which affects the efficiency of the subdivision of such vessels shall be watertight, and shall be of a design which will maintain the integrity of the subdivision.

3 The distance between the collision bulkhead and the forward perpendicular shall be at least $0,04 L_{WL}$ and not more than $0,04 L_{WL} + 2$ m.

4 A transverse bulkhead may be fitted with a bulkhead recess, if all parts of this offset lie within the safe area.

5 The bulkheads, which are taken into account in the damaged stability calculation according to Article 15.03(7) to (13), shall be watertight and be installed up to the bulkhead deck. Where there is no bulkhead deck, these bulkheads shall extend to a height at least 20 cm above the margin line.

6 The number of openings in these bulkheads shall be kept as low as is consistent with the type of construction and normal operation of the vessel. Openings and penetrations shall not have a detrimental effect on the watertight function of the bulkheads.

7 Collision bulkheads shall have no openings and no doors.

8 Bulkheads according to paragraph 5 separating the engine rooms from passenger areas or crew and shipboard personnel accommodation shall have no doors.

9 Manually operated doors without remote control in bulkheads referred to in paragraph 5, are permitted only in areas not accessible to passengers. They shall:

10 Doors in bulkheads referred to in paragraph 5 that are open for long periods shall comply with the following requirements:

11 Doors in bulkheads referred to in paragraph 5, and their actuators shall be located in the safe area.

12 There shall be a warning system in the wheelhouse to indicate which of the doors in bulkheads referred to in paragraph 5 are open.

13 Open-ended piping and ventilation ducts shall be offset in such a way that, in any conceivable flooding, no additional spaces or tanks are flooded through them.

14 Remote controls of bulkhead doors according to paragraph 10 and shut-off devices according to paragraph 13(b) above the bulkhead deck shall be clearly indicated as such.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

15 Where double bottoms are fitted, their height shall be at least 0,60 m, and where wing voids are fitted, their width shall be at least 0,60 m.

16 Windows may be situated below the margin line if they are watertight, cannot be opened, possess sufficient strength and conform to Article 15.06(14).

Article 15.03

Stability

1 The applicant shall prove by a calculation based on the results from the application of a standard for intact stability that the intact stability of the vessel is appropriate. All calculations shall be carried out free to trim and sinkage.

2 The intact stability shall be proven for the following standard load conditions:

3 The proof of adequate intact stability by means of a calculation shall be produced using the following definitions for the intact stability and for the standard load conditions mentioned in paragraph 2(a) to (d):

4 The heeling moment due to one-sided accumulation of persons shall be calculated according to the following formula:

5 The moment due to wind pressure (M_w) shall be calculated as follows:

6 The moment due to centrifugal force (M_{dr}), caused by the turning of the vessel, shall be calculated as follows:

7 The applicant shall prove, by means of a calculation based on the method of lost buoyancy, that the damaged stability of the vessel is appropriate in the event of flooding. All calculations shall be carried out free to trim and sinkage.

8 Buoyancy of the vessel in the event of flooding shall be proven for the standard load conditions specified in paragraph 2. Accordingly, mathematical proof of sufficient stability shall be determined for the three intermediate stages of flooding (25, 50 and 75 % of flood build-up) and for the final stage of flooding.

9 Passenger vessels shall comply with the one-compartment status and the two-compartment status.

10 For all intermediate stages of flooding referred to in paragraph 8, the following criteria shall be met:

11 During the final stage of flooding, the following criteria shall be met taking into account the heeling moment due to persons in accordance with paragraph 4:

12 The shut-off devices which shall be able to be closed watertight shall be marked accordingly.

13 If cross-flood openings to reduce asymmetrical flooding are provided, they shall meet the following conditions:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 15.04

Safety clearance and freeboard

- 1 The safety clearance shall be at least equal to the sum of:
- 2 The freeboard shall be at least equal to the sum of:
- 3 The plane of maximum draught is to be set so as to ensure compliance with the safety clearance according to paragraph 1, and the freeboard according to paragraph 2 and Articles 15.02 and 15.03.
- 4 For safety reasons, the inspection body may stipulate a greater safety clearance or a greater freeboard.

Article 15.05

Maximum permitted number of passengers

- 1 The inspection body shall set the maximum permitted number of passengers and shall enter this number on the Community certificate.
- 2 The maximum permitted number of passengers shall not exceed any of the following values:
- 3 For cabin vessels which are also used as day trip vessels, the number of passengers shall be calculated for use both as a day trip vessel and as a cabin vessel and entered on the Community certificate.
- 4 The maximum permitted number of passengers shall be displayed on clearly legible and prominently positioned notices on board the vessel.

Article 15.06

Passenger rooms and areas

- 1 Passenger rooms shall:
- 2 Cupboards and rooms referred to in Article 11.13 and intended for the storage of flammable liquids shall be outside the passenger area.
- 3 The number and width of the exits of passenger rooms shall comply with the following requirements:
- 4 Doors of passenger rooms shall comply with the following requirements:
- 5 Connecting corridors shall comply with the following requirements:
- 6 In addition to the provisions of paragraph 5, escape routes shall also comply with the following requirements:
- 7 Escape routes and emergency exits shall have a suitable safety guidance system.
- 8 For all persons on board, there shall be muster areas available which satisfy the following requirements:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

9 Stairs and their landings in the passenger areas shall comply with the following requirements:

10 Parts of the deck intended for passengers, and which are not enclosed, shall comply with the following requirements:

11 The parts of the vessel not intended for passengers, in particular access to the wheelhouse, to the winches and to the engine rooms, shall be such that they can be secured against unauthorised entry. At any such access, a symbol corresponding to Figure 1 in Appendix I shall be displayed in a prominent position.

12 Gangways shall be constructed in accordance with European standard EN 14206:2003. By way of derogation from Article 10.02(2)(d), their length can be less than 4 m.

13 Traffic areas intended for use by persons with reduced mobility shall have a clear width of 1,30 m and be free of doorsteps and sills more than 0,025 m high. Walls in traffic areas intended for use by persons with reduced mobility shall be equipped with handrails at a height of 0,90 m above the floor.

14 Glass doors and walls in traffic areas and also window panes shall be manufactured from pre-stressed glass or laminated glass. They may also be made from a synthetic material, provided this is authorised for use in a fire-protection context.

15 Superstructures or their roofs consisting completely of panoramic panes shall only be manufactured from materials which, in the event of an accident, reduce as much as possible the risks of injury to the persons on board.

16 Potable water systems shall, at least, comply with the requirements of Article 12.05.

17 There shall be toilets available for passengers. At least one toilet shall be fitted for use by persons with reduced mobility according to a relevant standard or a regulation of a Member State and shall be accessible from areas intended for use by persons with reduced mobility.

18 Cabins without an opening window shall be connected to a ventilation system.

19 By analogy, rooms in which crew members or shipboard personnel are accommodated shall comply with the provisions of this Article.

Article 15.07

Propulsion system

In addition to the main propulsion system, vessels shall be equipped with a second independent propulsion system so as to ensure that, in the event of a breakdown affecting the main propulsion system, the vessel can continue to make steerageway under its own power.

The second independent propulsion system shall be placed in a separate engine room. If both engine rooms have common partitions, these shall be built according to Article 15.11 (2).

Article 15.08

Safety devices and equipment

1 All passenger vessels shall have internal communication facilities according to Article 7.08. Such facilities shall also be available in the operation rooms and, where there is no direct

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

communication from the wheelhouse, in the access and evacuation areas for passengers as referred to in Article 15.06(8).

2 All passenger areas shall be reachable via a loudspeaker system. The system shall be designed in such a way as to ensure that the information transmitted can be clearly distinguished from background noise. Loudspeakers are optional where direct communication between the wheelhouse and the passenger area is possible.

3 The vessel shall be equipped with an alarm system. The system shall include:

4 Each watertight compartment shall be fitted with a bilge level alarm.

5 Two motor-driven bilge pumps shall be provided.

6 A permanently installed drainage system according to Article 8.08(4), shall be provided on board.

7 Cold-storage room doors, even when locked, shall also be capable of being opened from the inside.

8 Where CO₂ bar-systems are situated in rooms below deck these rooms shall be fitted with an automatic ventilation system which turns itself on automatically when the door or hatch to the room is opened. The ventilation ducts shall run down to 0,05 m from the floor of this room.

9 In addition to the first-aid kit according to Article 10.02(2)(f), further first-aid kits shall be provided in sufficient number. The first-aid kits and their storage shall comply with the requirements set out in Article 10.02(2)(f).

Article 15.09

Life-saving equipment

1 In addition to the lifebuoys specified in Article 10.05(1), all parts of the deck intended for passengers and not enclosed shall be equipped with lifebuoys in accordance with the European standard EN 14144: 2003 on both sides of the vessel, positioned not more than 20 m apart.

2 In addition to the lifebuoys referred to in paragraph 1, the following equipment shall be available and ready for use:

3 Passenger vessels shall have appropriate equipment to enable persons to be transferred safely to shallow water, to the bank or to another craft.

4 In addition to the life-saving equipment referred to in paragraphs 1 and 2, individual life-saving equipment according to European standard EN 395: 1998 or EN 396: 1998 shall be available for 100 % of the maximum permitted number of passengers.

5 The term 'collective life-saving equipment' covers ship's boats according to Article 10.04, and life rafts.

6 Additional collective life-saving appliances are items of life-saving equipment which ensure the buoyancy of several persons in the water. These shall:

7 Inflatable collective life-saving appliances shall in addition:

8 The life-saving appliances shall be stowed on board in such a way that they can be reached easily and safely when required. Concealed storage places shall be clearly marked.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 9 Life-saving equipment shall be checked according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- 10 The ship's boat shall be equipped with an engine and a searchlight.
- 11 A suitable stretcher shall be available.

Article 15.10

Electrical Equipment

- 1 Only electrical equipment shall be permitted for lighting.
- 2 Article 9.16(3), shall also apply additionally for passageways and recreation rooms for passengers.
- 3 For the following rooms and locations, adequate lighting and emergency lighting shall be provided:
 - 4 There shall be an emergency power plant, consisting of an emergency power source and emergency switchboard, which, in the event of a failure of the supply to the following electrical equipment, can immediately take over as their replacement supply, where the equipment does not have its own power source:
 - 5 The light fittings for the emergency lighting shall be marked as such.
 - 6 The emergency power plant shall be installed outside the main engine room, outside the rooms housing the power sources referred to in Article 9.02(1), and outside the room where the main switchboard is located; it shall be separated from these rooms by partitions according to Article 15.11(2).
 - 7 The following are admissible for use as an emergency power source:
 - 8 The projected operating period for the emergency power supply is to be defined according to the defined purpose of the passenger vessel. It shall not be less than 30 minutes.
 - 9 The insulation resistances and the earthing for electrical systems shall be tested on the occasion of inspections according to Article 2.09.
 - 10 The power sources according to Article 9.02(1), shall be independent of each other.
 - 11 A failure of the main or emergency power equipment shall not mutually affect the operational safety of the installations.

Article 15.11

Fire protection

- 1 The suitability for fire protection of materials and components shall be established by an accredited test institution on the basis of appropriate test methods.
- 2 Partitions between rooms shall be designed in accordance with the following tables:
 - 3 Paints, lacquers and other surface treatment products as well as deck coverings used in rooms except engine rooms and store rooms shall be flame-retardant. Carpets, fabrics, curtains and other hanging textile materials as well as upholstered furniture and components of

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

bedding shall be flame-retardant if the rooms in which they are located are not equipped with a pressurised sprinkler system according to Article 10.03a.

4 Lounge ceilings and wall claddings, including their substructures, shall, where these lounges do not have a pressurised sprinkler system according to Article 10.03a, be manufactured from non-combustible materials with the exception of their surfaces, which shall be at least flame-retardant.

5 Furniture and fittings in lounges which serve as muster areas shall, where the rooms do not have a pressurised sprinkler system according to Article 10.03a, be manufactured from non-combustible materials.

6 Paints, lacquers and other materials used on exposed internal areas shall not produce excessive amounts of smoke or toxic substances. This shall be proven in accordance with the Code for Fire Test Procedures.

7 Insulation materials in lounges shall be non-combustible. This does not apply to insulations used on coolant-carrying pipes. The surfaces of the insulation materials used on these pipes shall be at least flame-retardant.

8 Doors in partitions according to paragraph 2 shall satisfy the following requirements:

9 Walls according to paragraph 2 shall be continuous from deck to deck or end at continuous ceilings, which satisfy the same requirements as referred to in paragraph 2.

10 The following passenger areas shall be divided by vertical partitions as referred to in paragraph 2:

11 Hollows above ceilings, beneath floors and behind wall claddings shall be separated at intervals of not more than 14 m by non-combustible draught stops which, even in the event of fire, provide an effective fireproof seal.

12 Stairs shall be made of steel or another equivalent non-combustible material.

13 Internal stairs and lifts shall be encapsulated at all levels by walls according to paragraph 2. The following exceptions are permissible:

14 Ventilation systems and air supply systems shall satisfy the following requirements:

15 Galleys shall be fitted with ventilation systems and stoves with extractors. The air extraction ducts of the extractors shall satisfy the requirements according to paragraph 14 and, additionally, be fitted with manually operated fire dampers at the inlet openings.

16 Control centres, stairwells and internal evacuation areas shall be fitted with natural or mechanical smoke extraction systems. Smoke extraction systems shall satisfy the following requirements:

17 Lounges not constantly supervised by shipboard personnel or crew members, galleys, engine rooms and other rooms presenting a fire risk shall be connected to an appropriate fire alarm system. The existence of a fire and its exact whereabouts shall be automatically displayed at a location permanently manned by shipboard personnel or crew members.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 15.12

Fire-fighting

1 In addition to the portable extinguishers according to Article 10.03, at least the following portable extinguishers shall be available on board:

2 Passenger vessels shall be provided with a hydrant system consisting of:

3 Hydrant systems shall be designed and dimensioned in such a way that:

4 Hydrant valves with screw threads or cocks shall be such that they can be set so that each of the fire hoses can be separated and removed during operation of the fire extinguishing pumps.

5 Fire extinguisher hoses in the internal area shall be rolled up on an axially connected reel.

6 Materials for fire-fighting equipment shall either be heat-resistant or shall be suitably protected against failure to work when subjected to high temperatures.

7 Pipes and hydrants shall be arranged in such a way that the possibility of freezing is avoided.

8 The fire extinguishing pumps shall:

9 Engine rooms shall be fitted with a permanently fitted fire extinguishing system according to Article 10.03b.

10 On cabin vessels there shall be:

Article 15.13

Safety organisation

1 A safety rota shall be provided on board passenger vessels. The safety rota describes the duties of the crew and the shipboard personnel in the following eventualities:

2 The safety rota includes a safety plan, in which at least the following are clearly and precisely designated:

3 The safety rota according to paragraph 1 and the safety plan according to paragraph 2 shall:

4 A code of conduct for passengers shall be posted up in each cabin and also a simplified safety plan containing only the information referred to in paragraph 2(a) to (f).

Article 15.14

Waste water collection and disposal facilities

1 Passenger vessels shall be equipped with waste water collecting tanks or appropriate on-board sewage treatment systems.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Waste water collection tanks shall have sufficient capacity. Tanks shall be fitted with a device to indicate their content level. There shall be on-board pumps and pipes for emptying the tanks, whereby waste water can be passed from both sides of the vessel. It shall be possible to pass waste water from other vessels through.

Article 15.15

Derogations for certain passenger vessels

1 As an alternative to proving adequate stability after damage according to Article 15.03(7) to (13), passenger vessels with a length of not more than 25 m and authorised to carry up to a maximum of 50 passengers shall comply with the following criteria:

2 For passenger vessels in accordance with paragraph 1 the inspection body may permit minor derogations from the clear height required in Article 15.06(3)(c) and paragraph 5(b). The derogation shall not be more than 5 %. In the case of derogations the relevant parts shall be indicated by colour.

3 By way of derogation from Article 15.03(9), passenger vessels not exceeding 45 m in length and authorised to carry up to a maximum of 250 passengers do not need to have two-compartment status.

4 (Left void)

5 The inspection body may waive the application of Article 10.04 in the case of passenger vessels authorised to carry up to a maximum of 250 passengers and with a length of not more than 25 m, provided they are equipped with a platform, accessible from each side of the vessel, directly above the waterline, so as to enable persons to be recovered safely from the water. Passenger vessels may be equipped with a comparable installation, subject to the following conditions:

6 The inspection body may waive the application of Article 10.04 in the case of passenger vessels authorised to carry up to a maximum of 600 passengers and with a length of not more than 45 m, provided they are equipped with a platform according to paragraph 5, first sentence, or with an equivalent installation according to paragraph 5, second sentence. In addition, the passenger vessel shall have:

7 By way of derogation from Article 15.02(9), passenger vessels not exceeding 45 m in length and authorised to carry at most a number of passengers corresponding to the length of the vessel in metres are allowed to have on board, in the passenger area, a manually controlled bulkhead door without remote control according to Article 15.02(5), if:

8 On passenger vessels in accordance with paragraph 7, by way of derogation from Article 15.06(6)(c), one escape route may lead through a galley, as long as there is a second escape route available.

9 For passenger vessels with a length not exceeding 45 m the following shall not apply: Article 15.01(2)(e), when the liquefied gas installations are fitted with appropriate alarm systems for CO concentrations posing a health risk and for potentially explosive mixtures of gas and air.

10 The following provisions shall not apply to passenger vessels not exceeding 25 m in length:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

11 For cabin vessels not exceeding 45 m in length, Article 15.12(10), shall not apply, provided smoke-hoods in a number corresponding to the number of berths are readily accessible in each cabin.

CHAPTER 15a

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS FOR PASSENGER SAILING VESSELS

Article 15a.01

Application of Part II

In addition to the provisions of Part II, the requirements in this Chapter shall apply to passenger sailing vessels.

Article 15a.02

Exceptions for certain passenger sailing vessels

- 1 For passenger sailing vessels having an L_{WL} not exceeding 45 m and a maximum permissible number of passengers not exceeding L_{WL} in whole meters, the following provisions shall not apply:
- 2 By way of derogation from paragraph 1, the number of passengers may be raised to 1,5 times the L_{WL} in whole meters, if sails, rigging and deck fittings so permit.

Article 15a.03

Stability requirements for vessels under sail

- 1 For the calculation of the heeling moment according to Article 15.03(3), the furled sails shall be taken into account when determining the centre of gravity of the vessel.
- 2 Taking into consideration all load conditions according to Article 15.03(2), and using a standard arrangement of sails, the heeling moment caused by wind pressure shall not be so high as to exceed a heeling angle of 20°. At the same time
- 3 The righting lever of static stability shall
- 4 The area under the righting lever curve shall not be less than

Article 15a.04

Shipbuilding and mechanical requirements

- 1 By way of derogation from Article 6.01(3), and Article 9.01(3), the equipment must be designed for permanent lists of up to 20°.
- 2 By way of derogation from Article 15.06(5)(a) and Article 15.06(9)(b), the inspection body may, in the case of passenger sailing vessels not more than 25 m long, authorise a clear

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

width of less than 800 mm for connecting corridors and companionways. However, the clear width shall be at least 600 mm.

3 By way of derogation from Article 15.06(10)(a), the inspection body may, in specific cases, authorise the use of removable guard rails in areas where this is necessary for controlling the sails.

4 Within the meaning of Article 15.07, sails rank as a main propulsion system.

5 By way of derogation from Article 15.15(7)(c), the height of the lower edge of the door opening may be reduced to 200 mm above the floor of the passenger area. Once opened, the door shall close and lock automatically.

6 If there is a possibility of the propeller idling while the vessel is under sail, any endangered parts of the propulsion system shall be protected against potential damage.

Article 15a.05

Rigging in general

1 The parts of the rigging shall be arranged in such a way as to prevent unacceptable chafing.

2 If a material other than wood is used or if special types of rigging are used, such a design shall guarantee equivalent levels of safety with the dimensions and strength values laid down in this Chapter. As evidence of the strength

Article 15a.06

Masts and spars in general

1 All spars shall be made of high-quality material.

2 Wood for masts shall:

3 If the chosen timber is either pitch pine or Oregon pine of quality level 'clear and better' the diameters in the tables reproduced in Articles 15a.07 to 15a.12 can be reduced by 5 %.

4 If the timbers used for masts, topmasts, yardarms, booms and bowsprits are not round in cross-section, such timbers must be of equivalent strength.

5 Mast pedestals, mast trunks and fastenings on deck, on floor-plates and on stem or stern shall be constructed in such a way that they can either absorb the forces they are subjected to or transfer them to other connected parts of the structure.

6 Depending on the stability of the vessel and the external forces it is subjected to and also the distribution of the available sail area, the inspection body may, on the basis of the dimensions laid down in Articles 15a.07 to 15a.12, allow reductions in the cross-sections of the spars and, where appropriate, of the rigging. Evidence shall be submitted in accordance with Article 15a.05(2).

7 If the vessel's period of oscillation/period of roll, in seconds, is less than three quarters of its breadth, in metres, the dimensions set out in Articles 15a.07 to 15a.12 shall be increased. Evidence shall be submitted in accordance with Article 15a.05(2).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

8 In the tables reproduced in Articles 15a.07 to 15a.12 and 15a.14, possible intermediate values shall be interpolated.

Article 15a.07

Special provisions for masts

- 1 Wooden masts shall meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 Mast fittings, mast bands, cross-trees and mast caps shall be sufficiently strongly dimensioned and attached.

Article 15a.08

Special provisions for topmasts

- 1 Wooden topmasts shall meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 The overlap between the topmast and the mast shall be at least 10 times the required foot diameter of the topmast.

Article 15a.09

Special provisions for bowsprits

- 1 Wooden bowsprits shall meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 The inboard section of the bowsprit shall have a length of at least four times the diameter of the bowsprit at the stem.
- 3 The diameter of the bowsprit at its head shall be at least 60 % of the diameter of the bowsprit at the stem.

Article 15a.10

Special provisions for jib-booms

- 1 Wooden jib-booms shall meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 The diameter of the jib-boom at its head shall be at least 60 % of the diameter at the stem.

Article 15a.11

Special provisions for main booms

- 1 Wooden main booms shall meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 The diameter at the swivel pin shall be at least 72 % of the diameter specified in the table.
- 3 The diameter at the clew shall be at least 85 % of the diameter specified in the table.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

4 Measured from the mast, the greatest diameter shall be at two thirds of the length.

5 Where:

6 For sail areas of less than 50 m², the inspection body may authorise reductions in the dimensions set out in the table.

Article 15a.12

Special provisions for gaffs

1 Wooden gaffs shall meet the following minimum requirements:

2 The unsupported length of the gaff shall be not more than 75 %.

3 The breaking strength of the crowfoot shall be at least equal to 1,2 times the breaking strength of the peak halyard.

4 The top angle of the crowfoot shall be a maximum of 60°.

5 If, by way of derogation from paragraph 4, the top angle of the crowfoot is greater than 60°, the tensile strength shall be adjusted to accommodate the forces that will then occur.

6 For sail areas of less than 50 m², the inspection body may authorise reductions in the dimensions set out in the table.

Article 15a.13

General provisions for standing and running rigging

1 Standing and running rigging shall comply with the strength requirements set out in Articles 15a.14 and 15a.15.

2 Wire cable connections may take the form of:

3 Eye splices shall be provided with thimbles.

4 Ropes shall be routed in such a way as not to obstruct entrances and companionways.

Article 15a.14

Special provisions for standing rigging

1 Forestays and shrouds shall meet the following minimum requirements:

2 Backstays, topmasts, flying jib-stays, jib-booms and bowsprit shrouds shall meet the following minimum requirements:

3 The preferred rope design shall be based on Rope Construction Method 6 x 7 FE in the strength class 1 550 N/mm². Alternatively, at the same strength class, Construction Method 6 x 36 SE or 6 x 19 FE may be used. Because of the higher elasticity of Construction Method 6 x 19, the tensile strengths given in the table shall be increased by 10 %. Use of a different rope design shall be permitted provided it has comparable properties.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 4 If rigid rigging is used, the tensile strengths shown in the table shall be increased by 30 %.
- 5 For rigging, only approved forks, round eyes and bolts may be used.
- 6 Bolts, forks, round eyes and turnbuckles shall be capable of being properly secured.
- 7 The tensile strength of the bobstay shall be at least 1,2 times the tensile strength of the respective jib-stay and flying jib-stay.
- 8 For vessels with less than 30 m³ water displacement, the inspection body may permit the reductions in tensile strengths shown in the table set out below:

Article 15a.15

Special provisions for running rigging

- 1 For running rigging, fibre ropes or steel wire ropes shall be used. The minimum tensile strength and the diameter for running rigging shall, in relation to the sail area, meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 Running rigging forming part of the staying shall have a tensile strength which corresponds to that of the respective stay or shrouds.
- 3 If materials other than those stated in paragraph 1 are used, the strength values given in the table in paragraph 1 shall be complied with.

Article 15a.16

Fittings and parts of the rigging

- 1 If steel wire ropes or fibre ropes are used, the diameters of the rope sheaves (measured from centre of rope to centre of rope) shall meet the following minimum requirements:
- 2 By way of derogation from paragraph 1, the diameter of the rope sheaves may be equal to six times the diameter of the steel wire, provided that the steel wire does not constantly run over sheaves.
- 3 The tensile strength of the fittings (e.g. forks, round eyes, turnbuckles, eye-plates, bolts, rings and shackles) shall be compatible with the tensile strength of the standing or running rigging that is attached to them.
- 4 The fastenings of stay and shroud futtocks shall be designed to take up the forces they are subjected to.
- 5 Only one shackle, along with the relevant stay or shroud, may be attached to each eye.
- 6 Blocks of halyards and topping lifts shall be securely fastened to the mast, and the revolving crowfeet used for this purpose shall be in good condition.
- 7 Attachments of eye-bolts, cleats, belaying pins and fife-rails shall be designed to cope with the forces they are subjected to.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 15a.17

Sails

- 1 It shall be ensured that sails can be taken in simply, swiftly and safely.
- 2 The sail area shall be appropriate for the type of vessel and the water displacement.

Article 15a.18

Equipment

- 1 Vessels that are fitted with a jib-boom or a bowsprit shall have a jib-net and an adequate number of appropriate holding and tensioning devices.
- 2 The equipment according to paragraph 1 may be dispensed with if the jib-boom or bowsprit is equipped with a hand becket and a foot rope adequately dimensioned to allow for the attachment of a safety harness to be carried on board.
- 3 For work on the rigging, a boatswain's chair shall be provided.

Article 15a.19

Testing

- 1 The rigging shall be tested by the inspection body every 2,5 years. As a minimum, the test shall cover the following:
- 2 That part of the wooden mast passing through the deck and located below the deck shall be re-examined at intervals to be determined by the inspection body, but at the very least on the occasion of each periodical inspection according to Article 2.09. The mast shall be extracted for this purpose.
- 3 A certificate of the last inspection carried out in accordance with paragraph 1 and issued, dated and signed by the inspection body, shall be carried on board.

CHAPTER 16

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO CRAFT INTENDED TO FORM PART OF A PUSHED OR TOWED CONVOY OR OF A SIDE-BY-SIDE FORMATION

Article 16.01

Craft suitable for pushing

- 1 Craft which are to be used for pushing purposes shall incorporate a suitable pushing device. They shall be designed and equipped in such a way as to:
- 2 If the craft are joined together with cables the pusher craft shall be equipped with at least two special winches or equivalent coupling devices for tensioning the cables.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 3 The coupling devices shall enable a rigid assembly to be formed with the pushed craft.
- 4 The collision bulkhead referred to in Article 3.03(1)(a), can be dispensed with for pushers.

Article 16.02

Craft suitable for being pushed

- 1 The following shall not apply to lighters without steering system, accommodation, engine or boiler rooms:
- 2 In addition, ship-borne lighters whose length L does not exceed 40 m shall meet the following requirements:
- 3 Craft intended for being pushed shall be fitted with coupling devices ensuring a safe connection to other craft.

Article 16.03

Craft suitable for propelling side-by-side formations

Craft intended to propel side-by-side formations shall be equipped with bollards or equivalent devices which, as a result of their number and arrangement, enable the formation to be coupled in a safe manner.

Article 16.04

Craft suitable for being propelled in convoys

Craft intended to be propelled in convoys shall be equipped with coupling devices, bollards or equivalent devices which, as a result of their number and arrangement, ensure a safe connection to other craft in the convoy.

Article 16.05

Craft suitable for towing

- 1 Craft intended for towing shall meet the following requirements:
- 2 Craft of length L exceeding 86 m shall not be authorised for towing downstream.

Article 16.06

Navigation tests on convoys

- 1 In order to authorise a pusher or motor vessel to propel a rigid convoy, and to enter this on the Community certificate, the inspection body shall decide which formations are to be presented and shall conduct the navigation tests referred to in Article 5.02 with the convoy in the formation(s) applied for, which the inspection body regards to be the least favourable one(s). The requirements set out in Articles 5.02 to 5.10 shall be met by this convoy.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 If during the navigation tests referred to in paragraph 1 there are specific installations on board the craft that are being either pushed or propelled side-by-side, such as the steering system, propulsion units or manoeuvring equipment, or articulated couplings in order to meet the requirements set out in Articles 5.02 to 5.10, the following shall be entered on the Community certificate for the craft propelling the convoy: formation, position, name and official number of those craft which are fitted with the specific installations used.

Article 16.07

Entries on the Community certificate

1 If a craft is intended to propel a convoy, or be propelled in a convoy, its compliance with the relevant requirements as set out in Articles 16.01 to 16.06 shall be entered on the Community certificate.

2 The following information shall be entered on the Community certificate for the propelling craft:

CHAPTER 17

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO FLOATING EQUIPMENT

Article 17.01

General

For construction and equipment of floating equipment Chapters 3, 7 to 14 and 16 shall apply. Floating equipment with its own means of propulsion shall also meet the requirements of Chapters 5 and 6. Propulsion units permitting only short-haul operation shall not constitute own means of propulsion.

Article 17.02

Derogations

- 1 The inspection body may grant derogations from the following requirements:
- 2 The inspection body may dispense with the application of the following requirements:
- 3 In addition, the following shall apply:

Article 17.03

Additional requirements

1 Floating equipment on which persons are present during operation shall be fitted with a general alarm system. The alarm signal shall be clearly distinguishable from other signals and, within accommodation and at all work stations, shall produce a sound pressure level that is at least 5 dB(A) higher than the maximum local sound pressure level. It shall be possible to actuate the alarm system from the wheelhouse and the main work stations.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Working equipment shall have sufficient strength to withstand the loads it is subjected to and shall meet the requirements of Directive 98/37/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 22 June 1998 on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to machinery⁽¹⁰⁾;

3 The stability (resistance to overbalancing) and strength of working equipment, and where appropriate its attachments, shall be such that it may withstand the forces resulting from the expected heel, trim and movement of the floating equipment.

4 If loads are lifted by means of hoists the maximum authorised load deriving from stability and strength shall be prominently displayed on panels on deck and at the control stations. If the lifting capacity can be increased by connecting additional floats the values authorised both with and without these additional floats shall be clearly stated.

Article 17.04

Residual safety clearance

1 For the purposes of this Chapter and by way of derogation from Article 1.01 of this Annex, residual safety clearance means the shortest vertical distance between surface of the water and the lowest part of the floating equipment beyond which it is no longer watertight, taking into account trim and heel resulting from the moments referred to in Article 17.07(4).

2 The residual safety clearance is sufficient according to Article 17.07(1), for any spray-proof and weathertight aperture if it is at least 300 mm.

3 At an aperture that is not spray-proof and weathertight the residual safety clearance shall be at least 400 mm.

Article 17.05

Residual freeboard

1 For the purposes of this Chapter and by way of derogation from Article 1.01 of this Annex, residual freeboard means the smallest vertical distance between the surface of the water and the upper surface of the deck at its edge taking into account trim and heel resulting from the moments referred to in Article 17.07 (4).

2 The residual freeboard is sufficient according to Article 17.07(1), if it is at least 300 mm.

3 The residual freeboard may be reduced if it is proven that the requirements of Article 17.08 have been met.

4 Where the shape of a float differs perceptibly from that of a pontoon, as in the case of a cylindrical float, or where the cross-section of a float has more than four sides, the inspection body may require or authorise a residual freeboard that differs from programme 2. This shall also apply to floating equipment consisting of several floats.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 17.06

Heeling test

1 Confirmation of stability according to Articles 17.07 and 17.08 shall be based on a heeling test that has been carried out in a proper manner.

2 If during a heeling test it is not possible to achieve adequate heeling angles, or if the heeling test causes unreasonable technical difficulties, this may be replaced by a calculation of the craft's centre of gravity and weight. The result of the weight calculation shall be checked by measuring the draught, and the difference shall not exceed $\pm 5\%$.

Article 17.07

Confirmation of stability

1 It shall be confirmed that, when taking into account the loads applied during operation of the working gear and whilst under way, the residual freeboard and the residual safety clearance are sufficient. For that purpose the sum of the trim and heeling angles shall not exceed 10° and the bottom of the float shall not emerge.

2 Confirmation of stability shall include the following data and documents:

3 Confirmation of stability shall be based on at least the following load assumptions:

4.1 Confirmation of stability shall take account of the moments resulting from:

4.2 The moment caused by the wind pressure shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

4.3 In order to determine the moments due to turning whilst under way according to paragraph 4.1(d) for self-propelled floating equipment, the formula set out in Article 15.03 (6) shall be used.

4.4 The moment resulting from cross current according to paragraph 4.1(e) shall be taken into account only for floating equipment which is anchored or moored across the current while operating.

4.5 The least favourable extent of tank filling from the point of view of stability shall be determined and the corresponding moment introduced into the calculation when calculating the moments resulting from liquid ballast and liquid provisions according to paragraph 4.1(f).

4.6 The moment resulting from inertia forces according to paragraph 4.1(i) shall be given due consideration if the movements of the load and the working gear are likely to affect stability.

5 The righting moments for floats with vertical side walls may be calculated using the following formula

Article 17.08

Confirmation of stability in the case of reduced residual freeboard

If a reduced residual freeboard according to Article 17.05(3), is used, it shall be proven for all operating conditions that:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

(a) after correction for the free surfaces of liquids, the metacentric height is not less than 0,15 m;

(b) for heeling angles between 0 and 30°, there is a righting lever of at least

$$h = 0,30 - 0,28 \cdot \varphi_n \text{ (m)}$$

φ_n being the heeling angle from which the righting lever curve displays negative values (range of stability); it shall not be less than 20° or 0,35 rad and shall not be introduced into the formula for more than 30° or 0,52 rad, taking the radian (rad) (1° = 0,01745 rad) for the unit of φ° ;

(c) the sum of the trim and heeling angles does not exceed 10°;

(d) a residual safety clearance meeting the requirements in Article 17.04 remains;

(e) a residual freeboard of at least 0,05 m remains;

(f) for heeling angles between 0 and 30°, a residual righting lever of at least

$$h = 0,20 - 0,23 \cdot \varphi_n \text{ (m)}$$

remains, where φ_n is the heeling angle from which the righting lever curve displays negative values; it shall not be introduced into the formula for more than 30° or 0,52 rad.

Residual righting lever means the maximum difference existing between 0° and 30° of heel between the righting lever curve and the heeling lever curve. If an opening towards the inside of the vessel is reached by the water at a heeling angle less than that corresponding to the maximum difference between the lever curves, the lever corresponding to that heeling angle shall be taken into account.

Article 17.09

Draught marks and draught scales

Draught marks and draught scales shall be affixed in accordance with Articles 4.04 and 4.06.

Article 17.10

Floating equipment without confirmation of stability

1 The application of Articles 17.04 to 17.08 may be dispensed with for floating equipment:

2 However,

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

CHAPTER 18

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO WORKSITE CRAFT

Article 18.01

Operating conditions

Worksite craft designated as such in the Community certificate set out in Part I or II of Annex V may navigate outside worksites only when unladen. That restriction shall be entered on the Community certificate.

For this purpose worksite craft shall have a certificate issued by the competent authority indicating the duration of works and the geographical boundaries of the worksite in which the craft may be operated.

Article 18.02

Application of Part II

Unless otherwise specified in this Chapter the construction and equipment of worksite craft shall be in line with Chapters 3 to 14 of Part II.

Article 18.03

Derogations

- 1
- 2 The inspection body may dispense with the following provisions:

Article 18.04

Safety clearance and freeboard

1 If a worksite craft is used as a reclamation barge or a hopper barge the safety clearance outside the hold area shall be at least 300 mm and the freeboard at least 150 mm. The inspection body may permit a smaller freeboard if proof by calculation is provided that stability is sufficient for a cargo having a specific mass of 1,5 t/m³ and that no side of the deck reaches the water. The effect of liquefied cargo shall be taken into account.

2 The provisions of Articles 4.01 and 4.02 shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to worksite craft not covered by paragraph 1. The inspection body may determine values departing from the above for safety clearance and freeboard.

Article 18.05

Ship's boats

Worksite craft shall not be required to have a ship's boat where:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- (a) they are not self-propelled or
- (b) a ship's boat is available elsewhere on the worksite.

That derogation shall be entered on the Community certificate.

CHAPTER 19b

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO VESSELS NAVIGATING ON ZONE 4 WATERWAYS

Article 19b.01

Application of Chapter 4

1 By way of derogation from Article 4.01(1) and (2), the safety clearance of doors and openings other than hold hatches for vessels navigating on Zone 4 waterways is reduced as follows:

2 By way of derogation from Article 4.02, the minimum freeboard of vessels navigating on Zone 4 waterways is 0 mm, if the safety clearance according to paragraph 1 is respected.

CHAPTER 21

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO RECREATIONAL CRAFT

Article 21.01

General

Only Articles 21.02 and 21.03 shall apply to the construction and equipment of recreational craft.

Article 21.02

Application of Part II

1 Recreational craft shall meet the following requirements:

2 For recreational craft subject to Directive 94/25/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 June 1994 on the approximation of laws, regulations and administrative provisions of the Member States relating to recreational craft⁽¹¹⁾, first inspection and periodical inspections only extend to:

Article 21.03

(Left void)

CHAPTER 22

STABILITY OF VESSELS CARRYING CONTAINERS

Article 22.01

General

- 1 The provisions of this Chapter shall apply to vessels carrying containers where stability documents are required according to the applicable navigational authority regulations in force in the Member States.
- 2 Stability documents shall provide the boatmaster with comprehensible information on vessel stability for each loading condition.
- 3 For vessels where it is optional whether containers are carried non-secured or secured, separate calculation methods shall be provided for confirmation of stability both for transport of non-secured and secured cargoes of containers.
- 4 A cargo of containers shall only be considered to be secured if each individual container is firmly attached to the hull of the vessel by means of container guides or securing equipment and its position cannot alter during the voyage.

Article 22.02

Limit conditions and method of calculation for confirmation of stability for the transport of non-secured containers

- 1 All methods of calculating vessel stability in the case of non-secured containers shall meet the following limit conditions:
- 2 The stability of a vessel carrying non-secured containers shall be considered to be sufficient if the effective
 \overline{KG}
does not exceed the
 \overline{KG}
resulting from the following formulae. The
 \overline{KG}
shall be calculated for various displacements covering the entire range of draughts.
- 3 Approximation formula for
 \overline{KM}

Article 22.03

Limit conditions and method of calculation for confirmation of stability for the transport of secured containers

- 1 All methods of calculating vessel stability in the case of secured containers shall meet the following limit conditions:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The stability of a vessel carrying secured containers shall be considered to be sufficient if the effective

\bar{KG}

does not exceed

\bar{KG}

zu1 the resulting from the following formulae that has been calculated for various displacements covering the entire range of draughts.

3 Approximation formula for I

Article 22.04

Procedure for assessing stability on board

The procedure for assessing stability may be determined by the documents referred to in Article 22.01(2).

CHAPTER 22a

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO CRAFT LONGER THAN 110 M

Article 22a.01

Application of Part I

In addition to the requirements set out in Article 2.03(3), the inspection body which is subsequently to issue the Community certificate shall be informed by the owner or his representative before building of craft longer than 110 m, except sea-going ships, begins (building of a new vessel or extension of a vessel already in service). That inspection body shall conduct inspections during the building stage. It may dispense with inspections during the building stage if a certificate is produced before building begins to show that an approved classification society declares that it is to supervise that building.

Article 22a.02

Application of Part II

In addition to Part II, Articles 22a.03 to 22a.05 shall apply to craft that are longer than 110 m.

Article 22a.03

Strength

Sufficient hull strength in accordance with Article 3.02(1)(a) (longitudinal, lateral and local strength) shall be verified by a certificate issued by an approved classification society.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 22a.04

Buoyancy and stability

- 1 Paragraphs 2 to 9 shall apply to craft that are longer than 110 m, with the exception of passenger vessels.
- 2 The proof of sufficient stability, including stability after damage, shall be verified for the most unfavourable loading condition.
- 3 The proof of buoyancy after damage shall be verified for the fully laden craft.
- 4 The following assumptions shall be taken into consideration for the damaged condition:
 - 5 The stability after damage shall be sufficient if, on the basis of the assumptions in paragraph 4:
 - 6 When cross- or down-flooding openings are provided for reduction of asymmetrical flooding, the time for equalisation shall not exceed 15 minutes, if during the intermediate stages of flooding sufficient damaged stability has been verified.
 - 7 If openings through which undamaged compartments may additionally become flooded are capable of being closed watertight, the closing appliances shall be marked according to their operating instructions.
 - 8 The proof by calculation in accordance with paragraphs 2 to 5 shall be considered to have been provided if damaged stability calculations in accordance with Part 9 of the ADNR, are produced with a positive result.
- 9 Where necessary in order to meet the requirements in paragraphs 2 or 3, the plane of maximum draught shall be re-established.

Article 22a.05

Additional requirements

- 1 Craft longer than 110 m shall:
 - 2 For craft, except passenger ships, with a length of more than 110 m, which in addition to paragraph 1
 - 3 For passenger vessels with a length of more than 110 m which in addition to paragraph 1

Article 22a.06

Application of Part IV in the event of conversion

The inspection body may apply Chapter 24 to craft converted to a length of more than 110 m only on the basis of specific recommendations by the Committee.

CHAPTER 22b

SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO HIGH-SPEED VESSELS

Article 22b.01

General

- 1 High-speed vessels shall not be constructed as cabin vessels.
- 2 The following installations are prohibited on board high-speed vessels:

Article 22b.02

Application of Part I

- 1 In addition to the provisions of Article 2.03, high-speed vessels shall be constructed and classified under the supervision and in accordance with the applicable rules of an approved classification society which has special rules for high-speed vessels. The class shall be maintained.
- 2 By way of derogation from Article 2.06, Community certificates issued in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter shall be valid for a maximum of five years.

Article 22b.03

Application of Part II

- 1 Notwithstanding paragraph 2 and Article 22b.02(2), Chapters 3 to 15 shall apply to high-speed vessels, with the exception of the following provisions:
- 2 By way of derogation from Article 15.02(9), and Article 15.15(7), all doors in watertight bulkheads shall be capable of being remote controlled.
- 3 By way of derogation from Article 6.02(1), in case of failure or malfunctioning of the steering apparatus drive unit a second independent steering apparatus drive unit or a manually operated drive unit shall come into operation without time delay.
- 4 In addition to the requirements of Part II, high-speed vessels shall meet the requirements of Articles 22b.04 to 22b.12.

Article 22b.04

Seats and safety belts

Seats shall be available for the maximum number of passengers permitted on board. Seats shall be fitted with safety belts. Safety belts may be dispensed with where suitable impact protection is provided or where they are not required under Chapter 4, part 6, of the HSC Code 2000.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 22b.05

Freeboard

By way of derogation from Articles 4.02 and 4.03, the freeboard shall be at least 500 mm.

Article 22b.06

Buoyancy, stability and subdivision

For high-speed vessels, proper documentation shall be provided for:

- (a) buoyancy and stability characteristics adequate for safety where the craft is operated in the displacement mode, both when intact and when damaged;
- (b) stability characteristics and stabilising systems ensuring the safety of the craft when used in the dynamic buoyancy phase and the transition phase;
- (c) stability characteristics in the non-displacement and transitional modes adequate to transfer the craft safely to displacement mode in case of any system malfunction.

Article 22b.07

Wheelhouse

- 1 Arrangement
- 2 Unobstructed view
- 3 Instruments
- 4 Lighting
- 5 Windows
- 6 Surface materials

Article 22b.08

Additional equipment

High-speed craft shall have the following equipment:

- (a) a radar installation and rate-of-turn indicator according to Article 7.06(1),
- (b) readily accessible individual lifesaving equipment conforming to European Standard EN 395:1998 for the maximum number of persons permitted on board.

Article 22b.09

Closed areas

- 1 General

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 Communication

Article 22b.10

Exits and escape routes

Escape and evacuation routes shall satisfy the following requirements:

- (a) there shall be easy, safe and quick access from the steering position to spaces and accommodation accessible to the public;
- (b) escape routes leading to emergency exits shall be clearly and permanently marked;
- (c) all exits shall be properly marked. The operation of the opening mechanism shall be obvious from the outside and the inside;
- (d) the escape routes and emergency exits shall have a suitable safety guidance system;
- (e) sufficient space for a member of the crew shall be left next to exits.

Article 22b.11

Fire protection and fire-fighting

1 Corridors, rooms and accommodation accessible to the public and also galleys and engine rooms shall be connected to an appropriate fire alarm system. Any fire and its location shall be indicated automatically in a place permanently manned by crew.

2 Engine rooms shall be equipped with a permanently installed fire-fighting system according to Article 10.03b.

3 Rooms and accommodation accessible to the public and their escape routes shall be equipped with a pressurised water sprinkler system according to Article 10.03a. It shall be possible to drain the used water rapidly and directly to the outside.

Article 22b.12

Transitional provisions

High-speed vessels according to Article 1.01(22) which have a valid Community certificate on 31 March 2003 shall meet the following provisions of this Chapter:

- (a) Articles 22b.01, 22b.04, 22b.08, 22b.09, 22b.10, 22b.11(1)
when the Community certificate is renewed;
- (b) on 1 April 2013,
Article 22b.07(1), (3), (4), (5) and (6);
- (c) on 1 January 2023
all other provisions.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

PART III

CHAPTER 23

EQUIPMENT OF VESSELS WITH REGARD TO MANNING

Article 23.01

(Left void)

Article 23.02

(Left void)

Article 23.03

(Left void)

Article 23.04

(Left void)

Article 23.05

(Left void)

Article 23.06

(Left void)

Article 23.07

(Left void)

Article 23.08

(Left void)

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 23.09

Vessels' equipment

1 For motor vessels, pushers, pushed convoys and passenger vessels, compliance with, or failure to comply with, the provisions of subparagraphs 1.1 or 1.2 shall be entered in item 47 of the Community certificate by the inspection body.

1.1 Standard S1

1.2 Standard S2

Article 23.10

(Left void)

Article 23.11

(Left void)

Article 23.12

(Left void)

Article 23.13

(Left void)

Article 23.14

(Left void)

Article 23.15

(Left void)

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

PART IV

CHAPTER 24

TRANSITIONAL AND FINAL PROVISIONS

Article 24.01

Applicability of transitional provisions to craft which are already in service

- 1 The provisions of Articles 24.02 to 24.04 apply only to craft carrying on 30 December 2008 a valid vessel certificate according to the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation in force on 31 December 1994, or which were under construction or undergoing conversion on 31 December 1994.
- 2 For craft not covered by paragraph 1, the provisions of Article 24.06 apply.

Article 24.02

Derogations for craft which are already in service

- 1 Without prejudice to Articles 24.03 and 24.04, craft which do not fully comply with the provisions of this Directive must
- 2 The following definitions apply in the table below:

Article 24.03

Derogations for craft which were laid down on or before 1 April 1976

- 1 In addition to the provisions of Article 24.02, the following provisions may be applied to craft which were laid down on or before 1 April 1976.
- 2 Article 15.11(3)(a), applies to day-trip vessels laid down on or before 1 April 1976 until the first issue or renewal of the Community certificate after 1.1.2045, with the proviso that only paints, varnishes, coatings and other materials used on surfaces facing escape routes and other materials for the surface treatment of panels must be fire-resistant and that smoke or toxic vapours may not develop to any dangerous extent.
- 3 Article 15.11(12), applies to day-trip vessels laid down on or before 1 April 1976 until the first issue or renewal of the Community certificate after 1.1.2045, with the proviso that it is sufficient if, instead of stairs in the form of a load-bearing steel assembly, the stairs serving as an escape route are designed in such a way that they remain useable, in the event of a fire, for about the same time as stairs in the form of a load-bearing steel assembly.

Article 24.04

Other derogations

- 1 For craft the minimum freeboard of which was determined in accordance with Article 4.04 of the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation as applicable on 31 March 1983, the inspection

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

body may, at the request of the owner, determine the freeboard in accordance with Article 4.03 of the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation as applicable on 1 January 1995.

2 Craft laid down before 1 July 1983 do not need to conform to Chapter 9, but must at least conform to Chapter 6 of the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation as applicable on 31 March 1983.

3 Article 15.06(3)(a) to (e), and Article 15.12(3)(a), with regard to the rule concerning a single hose length apply only to craft laid down after 30 September 1984, and to conversions of the areas concerned, at the latest when the Community certificate is renewed after 1 January 2045.

4 If it is difficult in practical terms to apply the provisions set out in this Chapter following the expiry of the transitional provisions, or if their application gives rise to unreasonably high costs, the inspection body may allow derogations from these provisions subject to recommendations by the Committee. These derogations must be entered in the Community certificate.

5 Where this provision refers, with regard to equipment design requirements, to a European or an international standard, such equipment may, after any revision of the standard, continue to be used for a further 20 years following the revision of the standard.

Article 24.05

(Left void)

Article 24.06

Derogations for craft not covered by Article 24.01

1 The following provisions apply:

2 It must be proved that those craft comply with the Rhine Vessel Inspection Regulation as applicable on the date on which the vessel certificate or the other traffic licence is granted.

3 The craft must be adapted to comply with provisions which enter into force following the first issue of the vessel certificate or other traffic licence in accordance with the transitional provisions set out in the table below.

4 Article 24.04(4) and (5), apply *MUTATIS MUTANDIS*.

5 The following definitions apply in the table below:

Article 24.07

(Left void)

CHAPTER 24a

ADDITIONAL TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS FOR CRAFT NOT NAVIGATING ON ZONE R WATERWAYS

Article 24a.01

Application of transitional provisions to craft already in service and validity of previous Community certificates

- 1 The following provisions apply:
- 2 It must be proved that those craft comply with the provisions of Chapters 1 to 12 of Annex II to Directive 82/714/EEC on the date on which the Community certificate or the other traffic licence is issued.
- 3 Community certificates delivered before 30 December 2008 remain valid until the date of expiry indicated on the certificate. Article 2.09(2), remains applicable.

Article 24a.02

Derogations for craft already in service

- 1 Without prejudice to Articles 24a.03 and 24a.04, craft which do not fully comply with the provisions of this Directive must be adapted to comply with provisions which enter into force after the first issue of their Community certificate or other traffic licence in accordance with the transitional provisions listed in the table below.
- 2 The following definitions apply in the table below:

Article 24a.03

Derogations for craft which were laid down before 1 January 1985

- 1 In addition to the provisions in Article 24a.02, craft which were laid down before 1 January 1985 may be exempted from the following provisions, under the conditions described in column 3 of the table below, provided the safety of the vessel and its crew is ensured in an appropriate manner.
- 2 The following definitions apply in the table below:

Article 24a.04




Other derogations

If it is difficult in practical terms to apply the provisions set out in this Chapter following the expiry of the transitional provisions, or if their application gives rise to unreasonably high costs, the inspection body may allow derogations from these provisions subject to recommendations by the Committee. These derogations must be entered in the Community certificate.




Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Appendix I


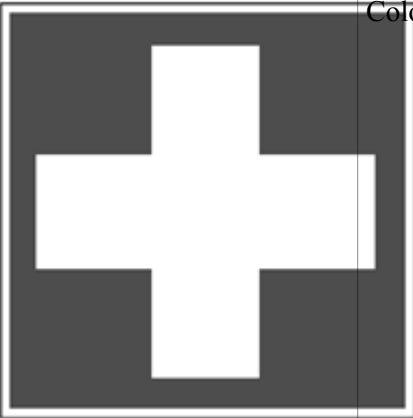
Safety signs

<p>Figure 1 No entry for unauthorised persons</p>		<p>Colour: red/white/black</p>
<p>Figure 2 Fire, naked flame and smoking prohibited</p>		<p>Colour: red/white/black</p>
<p>Figure 3 Fire extinguisher</p>		<p>Colour: red/white</p>

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

<p>Figure 4 General danger warning</p>		<p>Colour: black/yellow</p>
<p>Figure 5 Extinguisher hose</p>		<p>Colour: red/white</p>
<p>Figure 6 Fire-fighting installation</p>		<p>Colour: red/white</p>

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

<p>Figure 7 Wear acoustic protection device</p>		<p>Colour: blue/white</p>
<p>Figure 8 First-aid kit</p>		<p>Colour: green/white</p>

The symbols actually used may slightly differ from or be more detailed than the graphical representations in this Appendix, provided the meaning is not changed and differences and modifications do not render the meaning incomprehensible.

Appendix II

Administrative instructions

- | | | |
|----|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | : | Requirements relating to the capacity for evasive action and turning |
| 2 | : | Requirements concerning prescribed minimum speed, stopping capacity and capacity for going astern |
| 3 | : | Requirements for coupling systems and coupling devices for craft pushing or being pushed in a rigid assembly |
| 4 | : | Noise measurements |
| 5 | : | Special reduced mass anchors |
| 6 | : | Strength of watertight side-scuttles |
| 7 | : | Requirements for automatic pressurised-water spraying systems |
| 8 | : | Issue of the ship certificate |
| 9 | : | Fuel tanks on floating craft |
| 10 | : | Minimum hull thickness for barges |
| 11 | : | Used-oil collection facilities |
| 12 | : | Vessel movement under its own power |
| 13 | : | Appropriate fire alarm system |
| 14 | : | Proof of buoyancy, trim and stability of the separate parts of a vessel |
| 15 | : | Equipment for vessels which are to be operated with a minimum crew |
| 16 | : | Electric cables |
| 17 | : | Wheelhouse visibility |

ANNEX III

SUBJECTS FOR POSSIBLE ADDITIONAL TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO VESSELS ON INLAND WATERWAYS OF ZONES 1 AND 2

Any additional technical requirements adopted by a Member State under Article 5(1) of this Directive for vessels operating on Zones 1 and/or 2 of that Member State's territory are limited to the following subjects:

1. Definitions
 - Necessary for understanding the additional requirements
2. Stability
 - Structure reinforcement
 - Certificate/attestation by an approved Classification Society
3. Safety clearance and freeboard
 - Freeboard
 - Safety clearance
4. Watertightness of hull openings and superstructures
 - Superstructures
 - Doors
 - Windows and skylights
 - Hold hatches
 - Other openings (ventilation pipes, exhaust pipes, etc.)

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

5. Equipment
 - Anchors and anchor chains
 - Navigation lights
 - Sound signals
 - Compass
 - Radar
 - Transmitting and receiving installations
 - Life-saving equipment
 - Availability of nautical charts
6. Additional provisions for passenger vessels
 - Stability (wind strength, criteria)
 - Life-saving equipment
 - Freeboard
 - Safety clearance
 - Wheelhouse visibility
7. Convoys and container transport
 - Pusher connection craft-lighter
 - Stability of craft or lighters carrying containers

ANNEX IV

SUBJECTS FOR POSSIBLE REDUCTIONS OF THE TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO VESSELS ON INLAND WATERWAYS OF ZONES 3 AND 4

Any reduced technical requirements allowed by a Member State under Article 5(7) of this Directive for vessels operating exclusively on Zone 3 or Zone 4 waterways on the territory of that Member State are restricted to the following subjects:

Zone 3

- Anchor equipment, including length of anchor chains
- (Forward) speed
- Collective life-saving appliances
- Two-compartment status
- Wheelhouse visibility

Zone 4

- Anchor equipment, including length of anchor chains
- (Forward) speed
- Life-saving appliances
- Two-compartment status
- Wheelhouse visibility
- Second independent propulsion system

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

ANNEX V

MODEL COMMUNITY INLAND NAVIGATION CERTIFICATES

Part I

MODEL COMMUNITY INLAND NAVIGATION CERTIFICATE

COMMUNITY INLAND NAVIGATION CERTIFICATE

(Reserved for State emblem)

NAME OF STATE

CERTIFICATE No.....

.....,

(Place) (date)

Seal

.....
(Inspection body)

.....
(Signature)

Remarks

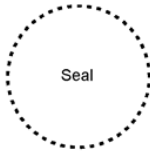
The craft may be used for navigation by virtue of this certificate only while in the condition herein described.

In the event of major alterations or repairs, the craft must undergo a special inspection before any new voyage..

The owner of the craft, or his representative, must inform an inspection body of any change in the name or ownership of the craft, any remeasurement and any change in the official number, registration number or home port, and send it the inspection certificate for amendment.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

1. Name of craft	2. Type of craft	3. Official number
4. Name and address of owner		
5. Place of registration and registration number	6. Home port	
7. Year of construction	8. Name and location of shipyard	
9. This certificate replaces Certificate No issued on by the inspection body		
10. The abovementioned craft, subsequent to the inspection carried out on (*) on presentation of the certificate issued on (*) by the approved classification society is acknowledged as fit to operate — on Community waterways in Zone(s) (*) on the waterways in Zone(s) (*) in (Names of States (*)) except for: — on the following waterways in :... (Name of the State (*)) at the maximum authorised draught and with the equipment and crew specified below.		
11. The validity of this certificate expires on		
(*) Amendment to item(s): New text: (*) This page has been replaced. (Place) (date) <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Seal</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>..... Inspection body</p> <p>..... (Signature)</p> </div> </div>		
(*) Delete as appropriate.		

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

12. The certificate number (1), official number (2), registration number (3) and measurement number (4) are affixed with the corresponding signs at the following locations on the craft
1.
2.
3.
4.

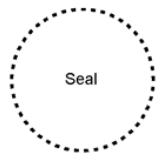
13. The maximum authorised draught is indicated on each side of the craft
— by two — — draught marks (*).
— by the upper measurement plates (*).
Two draught scales have been applied (*).
The rear measurement scales serve as draught scales: they have been supplemented for that purpose by figures indicating the draughts (*).

14. Without prejudice to the restrictions (*) mentioned in items 15 and 52, the craft is fit to
1. push (*)
1.1 in rigid formation (*)
1.2 with controlled articulation (*)
2. be pushed (*)
2.1 in rigid formation (*)
2.2 at the head of a rigid formation (*)
2.3 with controlled articulation (*)
3. propel a side-by-side formation (*)
4. be propelled in a side-by-side formation (*)
5. tow (*)
5.1 craft having no motive power of their own (*)
5.2 motorised craft (*)
5.3 upstream only (*)
6. be towed (*)
6.1 as a motorised craft (*)
6.2 as a craft with no motive power of its own (*)

(*) Amendment to item(s):
New text:

(*) This page has been replaced.

..... (Place) (date)



..... (Inspection body)

..... (Signature)

(*) Delete as appropriate.

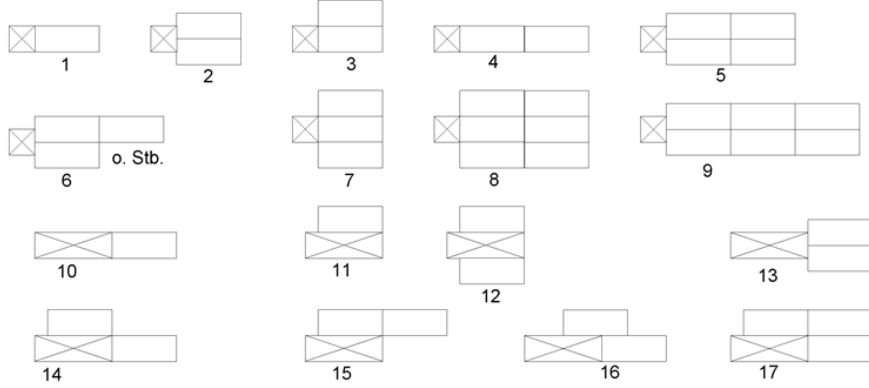
Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

15. Authorised formations

1. The craft is authorised to propel the following formations:

Formation figure	Restrictions resulting from chapters 5 and 16								Remarks:
	Maximum dimensions, m		Navigation direction and load status				Maximum wetted section in m ²		
	length	breadth	upstream		downstream		upstream	downstream	
No			loaded t	empty	loaded t	empty			



Other formations

Key to symbols:



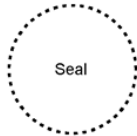
2. Couplings::

Type of coupling: Number of couplings per side:
 Number of coupling cables: Length of each coupling cable: m
 Tensile strength per longitudinal coupling: kN Number of cable windings:
 Tensile strength per coupling cable: kN

(*) Amendment to item(s):
 New text:

(*) This page has been replaced.

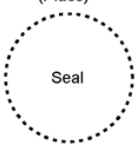
..... (date)
 (Place)
 (Inspection body)
 (Signature)



(*) Delete as appropriate.

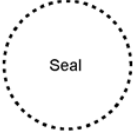
Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

16. Measurement certificate No of the Measurement Office dated.....			
17 a. Length overall	m	18 a. Breadth overall	m
17 b. Length L	m	18 b. Breadth B	m
19. Maximum draught		m	20. Freeboard
			cm
21. Dead weight/Displacement (*) t/m ³ (*)		22. Number of passengers:	
		23. Number of passenger berths:	
24. Number of watertight compartments		25. Number of holds	
		26. Type of hatch cover	
27. Number of main propulsion engines		28. Total power rating of main means of propulsion kw	
		29. Number of main propellers	
30. Number of bow windlasses of which..... powered		31. Number of stern windlasses of which..... powered	
32. Number of towing hooks		33. Number of towing winches of which..... powered	
34. Steering gear			
Number of rudder blades on main rudder		Main rudder drive	
		— manual (*)	
		— electric (*)	
		— electric/hydraulic (*)	
		— hydraulic (*)	
Other installations: yes/no (*) Type:			
Flanking rudder: yes /no (*)		Flanking rudder drive:	
		— manual (*)	
		— electric (*)	
		— electric/hydraulic (*)	
		— hydraulic (*)	
Bow rudder installation si/no (*)		— bow rudder (*)	
		— bow thruster (*)	
		— other installation (*)	
		— Remote control yes /no (*)	
		Remote activation yes /no (*)	
35. Pumping equipment			
Total calculated capacity		Number of power driven pumps	
..... l/min		
		Flow rate	
	 l/min	
		Number of pumps	
		
(*) Amendment to item(s):.....			
New text:			
.....			
.....			
(*) This page has been replaced.			
		
(Place)		(date)	
		
		(Inspection body)	
		
		(Signature)	
(*) This page has been replaced.			

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

36. Number and position of closures referred to in Article 8.08(10) and (11)			
37. Anchors			
Number of bow anchors	Total mass of bow anchors kg	Number of stern anchors	Total mass of stern anchors kg
38. Anchor chains			
Number of bow anchor chains	Length of each chain m	Tensile strength of each chain kN	
Number of stern anchor chains	Length of each chain m	Tensile strength of each chain kN	
39. Mooring cables			
1st cable m long with a tensile strength of..... kN			
2nd cable m long with a tensile strength of..... kN			
3rd cable m long with a tensile strength of..... kN			
40. Towing cables			
..... with a length of m and a tensile strength of..... kN			
..... with a length of m and a tensile strength of..... kN			
41. Visual and audible signals			
The lights, flags, balls, floats and audible warning devices used for signalling and to emit the visual and audible signals prescribed by the navigational authority regulations in force in the Member States are carried on board, as are the stand-alone emergency mooring lights prescribed by the navigational authority regulations in force in the Member States			
(*) Amendment to item(s):			
New text:			
.....			
.....			
(*) This page has been replaced			
.....			
(Place)		(date)	
		
		(Inspection body)	
		
		(Signature)	
(*) Delete as appropriate.			

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

42.	Other equipment heaving line gangway with handrail gaff hook first-aid kit pair of binoculars notice concerning rescue of persons overboard fire-resistant receptacles embarkation stairway/ladder (*)	Voice communication system Radio-telephone installation Cranes	— alternative two-way (*) — simultaneous two-way/telephone (*) — internal radio-telephone link (*) — vessel-to-vessel service — nautical information service — vessel-port authority service — in accordance with Article 11.12(9) (*) — other cranes with a useful load not exceeding 2 000 kg (*)
43.	Fire-fighting appliances Number of fire pumps	Number of portable extinguisher Number of hydrants	Fixed sprinkler system(s) No. Number (*) Other fixed fire-fighting system(s) No. Number (*) Number of hoses
The powered drainage pump replaces a fire pump Yes/No (*)			
44.	Life-saving equipment Number of lifebuoys A life-jacket for each person regularly on board. Other life-saving equipment on passenger vessels (*) A ship's boat with a set of oars, one mooring line and a baler (*) Collective life-saving equipment on passenger vessels (*)		
45.	Special wheelhouse arrangements for radar navigation by one person: The vessel has a wheelhouse designed for radar navigation by one person (*).		
(*) Amendment to item(s): New text:			
(*) This page has been replaced. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> (Place)  Seal </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> (date) (Inspection body) (Signature) </div> </div>			
(*) Delete as appropriate.			

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

46. Operating modes meeting the requirements of national or international law concerning the crew (**)

47. Vessel equipment in accordance with Article 23.09
The vessel (complies) (*)/(does not comply) (*) with Article 23.09 (1)(*)/(Article 23.09(1)(2) (*)

Space for entering the minimum crew meeting the requirements of national or international law (**)	Space for entering the operating modes according to item 46.		
.....
.....

48. Space for entering the minimum crew for vessels that are not covered by general minimum crew prescriptions in national or international requirements (**)

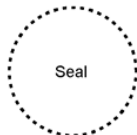
	Space for entering the operating modes (**)		
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Observations and special conditions:
.....
.....
.....
.....

(*) Amendment to item(s):
New text:
.....

(*) This page has been replaced.

..... (Place) (date)






..... (Inspection body)

..... (Signature)

(*) Delete as appropriate.
(**) Requirements of national or international law which a Member State may choose to apply, or have no requirements.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

49.	<p>Extension/confirmation (*) of certificate validity (*) Periodical/special (*) inspection</p> <p>The Inspection Body inspected the vessel on (*).</p> <p>A certificate dated from the approved classification society</p> <p>.....</p> <p>was presented to the inspection body (*)</p> <p>Reason for the inspection/certificate (*)</p> <p>.....</p> <p>In view of the inspection result/certificate (*), the period of validity of the certificate is maintained/extended (*)</p> <p>until</p> <p>..... (Place) , (date)</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Seal</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>..... (Inspection body)</p> <p>..... (Signature)</p> </div> </div> <p>.....</p> <p>(*) Delete as appropriate.</p>	
49.	<p>Extension/confirmation (*) of certificate validity (*) Periodical/special (*) inspection</p> <p>The Inspection Body inspected the vessel on (*).</p> <p>A certificate dated from the approved classification society</p> <p>.....</p> <p>was presented to the inspection body (*)</p> <p>Reason for the inspection/certificate (*)</p> <p>.....</p> <p>In view of the inspection result/certificate (*), the period of validity of the certificate is maintained/extended (*)</p> <p>until</p> <p>..... (Place) , (date)</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Seal</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>..... (Inspection body)</p> <p>..... (Signature)</p> </div> </div> <p>.....</p> <p>(*) Delete as appropriate.</p>	
49.	<p>Extension/confirmation (*) of certificate validity (*) Periodical/special (*) inspection</p> <p>The Inspection Body inspected the vessel on (*).</p> <p>A certificate dated from the approved classification society</p> <p>.....</p> <p>was presented to the inspection body (*)</p> <p>Reason for the inspection/certificate (*)</p> <p>.....</p> <p>In view of the inspection result/certificate (*), the period of validity of the certificate is maintained/extended (*)</p> <p>until</p> <p>..... (Place) , (date)</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Seal</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>..... (Inspection body)</p> <p>..... (Signature)</p> </div> </div> <p>.....</p> <p>(*) Delete as appropriate.</p>	

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

49. Extension/confirmation (*) of certificate validity (*) Periodical/special (*) inspection
 The Inspection Body inspected the vessel on (*).
 A certificate dated from the approved classification society

 was presented to the inspection body (*)
 Reason for the inspection/certificate (*)

 In view of the inspection result/certificate (*), the period of validity of the certificate is maintained/extended (*)
 until
 (Place) , (date)

 Seal (Inspection body)
 (Signature)
 (*) Delete as appropriate.

49. Extension/confirmation (*) of certificate validity (*) Periodical/special (*) inspection
 The Inspection Body inspected the vessel on (*).
 A certificate dated from the approved classification society

 was presented to the inspection body (*)
 Reason for the inspection/certificate (*)

 In view of the inspection result/certificate (*), the period of validity of the certificate is maintained/extended (*)
 until
 (Place) , (date)

 Seal (Inspection body)
 (Signature)
 (*) Delete as appropriate.

49. Extension/confirmation (*) of certificate validity (*) Periodical/special (*) inspection
 The Inspection Body inspected the vessel on (*).
 A certificate dated from the approved classification society

 was presented to the inspection body (*)
 Reason for the inspection/certificate (*)

 In view of the inspection result/certificate (*), the period of validity of the certificate is maintained/extended (*)
 until
 (Place) , (date)

 Seal (Inspection body)
 (Signature)
 (*) Delete as appropriate.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

50. Attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)

The liquefied gas installation(s) on board the craft has/have been inspected by the authorised officer (*)

 and according to his acceptance report dated (*) fulfil(s) the conditions laid down

The plant(s) include(s) the following gas-consuming appliances::

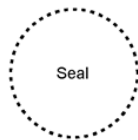
Plant	Serial No	Model	Make	Type	Position

This attestation is valid until

 (Place) (date)

Authorised officer (*)

(Inspection body)



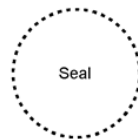
(Signature)

(*) Amendment to item(s):

New text:

(*) This page has been replaced.

.....
 (Place) (date)



(Inspection body)

(Signature)

(*) Delete as appropriate.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Certificate No of the inspection body

51. Extension of the attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)

The period covered by the attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)
 dated: is extended until.....
 — following the periodical inspection by the authorised officer
 — on presentation of the acceptance report dated.....

.....
 (Place) , (date)

.....
 (Inspection body)

.....
 (Signature)

Seal

51. Extension of the attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)

The period covered by the attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)
 dated: is extended until.....
 — following the periodical inspection by the authorised officer
 — on presentation of the acceptance report dated.....

.....
 (Place) , (date)

.....
 (Inspection body)

.....
 (Signature)

Seal

51. Extension of the attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)

The period covered by the attestation relating to liquefied gas installation(s)
 dated: is extended until.....
 — following the periodical inspection by the authorised officer
 — on presentation of the acceptance report dated.....

.....
 (Place) , (date)

.....
 (Inspection body)

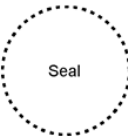
.....
 (Signature)

Seal

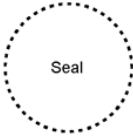
Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Part II

MODEL SUPPLEMENTARY COMMUNITY INLAND NAVIGATION CERTIFICATE

Annex to inspection certificate for the Rhine No.....	Page 1
<p>SUPPLEMENTARY COMMUNITY INLAND NAVIGATION CERTIFICATE</p> <p>(Reserved for State emblem)</p> <p>NAME OF STATE</p> <p>Name and address of the competent authority issuing the supplementary certificate</p> <p>1. Name of vessel:</p> <p>2. Official number:</p> <p>3. Place of registration and registration number:</p> <p>4. Country of registration and/or home port ⁽¹⁾</p> <p>5. Having regard to the inspection certificate for the Rhine No..... dated valid until</p> <p>6. Having regard to the result of the inspection..... on</p> <p>7. the abovementioned vessel is deemed fit to operate on the Community waterways of Zone(s) de la Comunidad Europea</p> <p>8. This supplementary certificate expires on</p> <p>9. Issued in, on</p> <p>10.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Seal</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>.....</p> <p>(Competent authority)</p> <p>.....</p> <p>(Signature)</p> </div> </div>	
<p>⁽¹⁾ Delete where inapplicable.</p>	

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Page 2		Annex to inspection certificate for the Rhine No.....				
11.		Zone and / or waterways ⁽¹⁾				
		4	3	2	1	
Freeboard (cm)	with hold closed					
	with hold open					
12. Derogations from inspection certificate for the Rhine No						
.....						
.....						
.....						
.....						
.....						
.....						
13. The entries concerning the number of crew members in the inspection certificate for the Rhine do not apply.						
14. Having regard to inspection certificate for the Rhine No						
dated valid until.....						
Having regard to the result of the inspection						
.....on						
This supplementary certificate is extended/renewed ⁽¹⁾ until						
.....						
(Place)			(date)			
	 (Competent authority)				
	 (Signature)				
<p>⁽¹⁾ Delete where inapplicable.</p>						

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Part III

MODEL PROVISIONAL COMMUNITY INLAND NAVIGATION CERTIFICATE

Provisional Community certificate (*)/Provisional certificate of Approval (*) No

1. Name of craft	2. Type of craft	3. Official number						
4. Name and domicile of owner								
5. Length L/L _{WL} (*) Number of passengers Number of berths (*)								
6. Space for information about the crew								
6.1 Operating modes meeting the requirements of national or international law (**)								
6.2 Vessel equipment in accordance with Article 23.09 The vessel (complies *)/(does not comply *)/with Article 23.09(1) (*)/(Article 23.09(1)(2) (*)								
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;">Space for entering the minimum crew meeting the requirements of national or international law (**)</td> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;">Space for entering the operating modes according to 6.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">.....</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">.....</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">.....</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">.....</td> </tr> </table>	Space for entering the minimum crew meeting the requirements of national or international law (**)	Space for entering the operating modes according to 6.1		
Space for entering the minimum crew meeting the requirements of national or international law (**)	Space for entering the operating modes according to 6.1							
.....							
.....							
6.3. Space for entering the minimum crew for vessels that are not covered by general minimum crew prescriptions in national international requirements (**)								
7. Liquefied gas installation(s) Attestation valid until								
8. Special conditions								
9. Carriage of dangerous goods, see separate box (*)								
10. Validity Provisional certificate (*)/provisional certificate of approval (*) valid until for navigation (*)/for a single voyage (*) (Date)								
The abovementioned craft is acknowledged as fit to operate								
— on Community waterways in Zone(s) (*)								
on the waterways in Zone(s) (*)								
in (Names of States (*)								
except for								
.....								
— on the following waterways in (Name of State (*)).....								
.....								

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

11. (Place) , (Date) , (Place) , (Date)

..... (Competent authority for provisional certificate of approval) (Inspection body)

..... Signature Signature

Seal Seal

(*) Delete as appropriate.
(**) Requirements of national or international law which a Member State may choose to apply, or have no requirements

9. Carriage of dangerous goods
(Indicate whether the vessel meets the requirements of national and international law, if any)

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

(Right-hand page)

Deadweight according to tonnage certificate or displacement (*)			Zones or stretch of inland waterway, where appropriate		Endorsements concerning supplementary or special inspections, withdrawal and annulment of the certificate	Community inland navigation certificate valid until	Other comments
Date of tonnage certificate	Tonnage mark	t/m ³	from	to			

(*) If no tonnage certificate is available, estimate the deadweight or displacement.

ANNEX VII

CLASSIFICATION SOCIETIES

Part I

Criteria for the approval of classification societies

Classification societies seeking approval pursuant to Article 10 of this Directive shall meet all the following criteria:

1. the classification society shall be able to document extensive experience in assessing the design and construction of inland waterway vessels, including vessels for the carriage of dangerous goods. The classification society shall have comprehensive rules and regulations for the design, construction and periodic inspection of inland waterway vessels, including vessels for the carriage of dangerous goods, which shall be published at least in Dutch, English, French or German and shall be continuously updated and improved through research and development programmes. The rules and regulations must not conflict with the provisions of Community law or with international agreements in force;
2. the classification society shall publish its register of vessels annually;
3. the classification society shall not be controlled by shipowners or shipbuilders or by others engaged commercially in the design, manufacture, fitting-out, repair, operation or insurance of ships. The classification society shall not be dependent on a single commercial enterprise for its revenue;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

4. the headquarters of the classification society or a branch authorised to give a ruling and to act in all areas incumbent on it under the regulations governing inland waterway transport shall be located in one of the Member States;
5. the classification society and its experts shall have a good reputation in inland waterway transport; the experts shall be able to provide proof of their professional abilities. They shall act on the responsibility of the classification society;
6. the classification society shall have a significant technical, managerial, support, inspection and research staff, in proportion to the tasks and the vessels classified and catering also for developing capability and updating the regulations. It shall have inspectors in at least one Member State;
7. the classification society shall be governed by a code of ethics;
8. the classification society shall be managed and administered in such a way as to ensure the confidentiality of information required by a Member State;
9. the classification society shall be prepared to provide relevant information to a Member State;
10. the classification society's management shall have defined and documented its policy and objectives for, and commitment to, quality and ensured that this policy is understood, implemented and maintained at all levels in the classification society;
11. the classification society shall have prepared and implemented and shall maintain an effective internal quality system based on the relevant parts of internationally recognised quality standards and complying with the EN 45004 (inspection bodies) and EN 29001 standards, as interpreted by the IACS Quality System Certification Scheme Requirements. The quality system must be certified by an independent body of auditors recognised by the administration of the State in which the classification society has its headquarters or branch, as provided for in subparagraph 4, and which, *inter alia*, ensures that:
 - (a) the classification society's rules and regulations are established and maintained in a systematic manner;
 - (b) the classification society's rules and regulations are complied with;
 - (c) the requirements of the statutory work for which the classification society is authorised are satisfied;
 - (d) the responsibilities, powers and interrelation of personnel whose work affects the quality of the classification society's services are defined and documented;
 - (e) all work is carried out under controlled conditions;
 - (f) a supervisory system is in place which monitors the actions and work carried out by surveyors and technical and administrative staff employed directly by the classification society;
 - (g) the requirements of major statutory work for which the classification society is authorised are only carried out or directly supervised by its exclusive surveyors or by exclusive surveyors of other approved classification societies;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- (h) a system for qualification of surveyors and continuous updating of their knowledge is implemented;
 - (i) records are maintained, demonstrating achievement of the required standards in the items covered by the services performed, as well as the effective operation of the quality system; and
 - (j) a comprehensive system of planned and documented internal audits of quality-related activities exists in all locations.
12. the quality system must be certified by an independent body of auditors recognised by the administration of the State in which the classification society has its headquarters or branch, as provided for in paragraph 4;
13. the classification society shall undertake to bring its requirements into line with the appropriate European Union directives and to provide the Committee with all relevant information in good time;
14. the classification society shall undertake periodically to consult with the classification societies already approved in order to guarantee the equivalence of their technical standards and of implementation thereof, and should allow participation in the development of its rules and regulations by representatives of a Member State and other parties concerned.

Part II

Procedure for the approval of classification societies

A decision to approve a classification society pursuant to Article 10 of this Directive is to be taken by the Commission according to the procedure referred to in Article 19(2) of this Directive. In addition, the following procedure must be observed:

1. an application for approval shall be submitted to the Commission by the representatives of the State in which the classification society has its headquarters or a branch authorised to give a ruling and act in all areas incumbent on it under the regulations governing inland waterway vessels. Furthermore, the representatives of this State shall send all information and documentation needed to check that the criteria for approval are met;
2. any Committee member can demand a hearing with the classification society concerned or that further information or documentation be provided;
3. approval shall be withdrawn in a similar way. Any Committee member can ask for approval to be withdrawn. The representatives of the State asking for the withdrawal shall submit the information and documentation supporting their application;
4. when making its decisions, the Commission shall take account of decisions made by the Central Commission for Navigation on the Rhine regarding approval of the classification society concerned. Before approving a classification society which has not been approved by the Central Commission for Navigation on the Rhine, the Commission shall consult the Secretariat of the Central Commission;
5. following each decision on approval of a classification society or the withdrawal of approval, the list of approved societies shall be amended;

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

6. the Commission shall inform the classification societies concerned of the Commission's decisions.

Part III

List of approved classification societies

On the basis of the criteria set out in Parts I and II, the following classification societies are currently approved in accordance with Article 10 of this Directive:

1. Bureau Veritas,
2. Germanischer Lloyd,
3. Lloyd's Register of Shipping.

Until their approval under Parts I and II, classification societies which are recognised and approved and authorised by a Member State in accordance with Council Directive 94/57/EC of 22 November 1994 on common rules and standards for ship inspection and survey organisations and for the relevant activities of maritime administrations⁽¹³⁾ are currently approved in accordance with Article 10 of this Directive only in respect of vessels which operate exclusively on waterways of that Member State.

ANNEX VIII

RULES OF PROCEDURE FOR THE CARRYING OUT OF INSPECTIONS

Article 1

If the authorities find upon inspection that the certificate carried on the vessel is invalid, or that the vessel does not satisfy the requirements set out in the certificate, but that such invalidity or failure to satisfy the requirements does not constitute a manifest danger, the owner of the vessel or his representative shall take all necessary measures to remedy the situation. The authority which issued the certificate or which last renewed it shall be informed within seven days.

Article 2

If, upon making the inspection referred to in Article 1, the authorities find that the certificate is not being carried or that the vessel constitutes a manifest danger, they may prevent the vessel from proceeding until the necessary steps have been taken to remedy the situation.

They may also prescribe measures which will enable the vessel to proceed safely, where appropriate on termination of its transport operations, to a place where it will be either inspected or repaired. The authority which issued or last renewed the certificate shall be informed within seven days.

Article 3

A Member State which has prevented a vessel from proceeding, or has notified the owner of its intention to do so if the defects found are not corrected, shall inform the authority in the Member State which issued or last renewed the certificate, within seven days, of the decision which it has taken or intends to take.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 4

Any decision to interrupt the passage of a vessel taken pursuant to measures adopted in implementation of this Directive shall state in detail the reasons on which it is based. It shall be notified without delay to the party concerned, who shall at the same time be informed of the appeal procedures available to him under the laws in force in the Member States and of their time limits.

ANNEX IX

REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO SIGNAL LIGHTS, RADAR INSTALLATIONS AND RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS

PART I

REQUIREMENTS CONCERNING THE COLOUR AND INTENSITY OF LIGHTS AND THE APPROVAL OF SIGNAL LANTERNS FOR INLAND WATERWAY VESSELS

CHAPTER 1

DEFINITIONS

Article 1.01

Signal lanterns

- 1 'Lantern' means a device for distributing the flux from an artificial light source; it also includes the components needed to filter, refract or reflect the light, and to hold or operate the light source.
- 2 Lanterns intended to give signals on board a vessel are called signal lanterns.

Article 1.02

Signal lights

1. 'Signal lights' means the light signals emitted by signal lanterns.
2. 'Masthead light' means a white light, visible throughout a horizontal arc of 225° and projecting a uniform uninterrupted beam over 112° 30' on each side, i.e. from the bow to 22° 30' abaft the beam on each side.
3. 'Side lights' means a green light to starboard and a red light to port; each of these lights shall be visible throughout a horizontal arc of 112° 30' and project a uniform uninterrupted beam, i.e. from the bow to 22° 30' abaft the beam.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

4. 'Stern light' means a white light, visible throughout a horizontal arc of 135° and projecting a uniform uninterrupted beam over a sector of 67° 30' along each side from the stern.
5. 'Yellow stern light' means a yellow light, visible throughout a horizontal arc of 135° and projecting a uniform uninterrupted beam over a sector of 67° 30' along each side from the stern.
6. 'Light visible from all directions' means a light visible throughout a horizontal arc of 360° and projecting a uniform uninterrupted beam.
7. (a) 'Scintillating light' means a light flashing at a rate of 40 to 60 light periods per minute.
(b) 'Rapidly scintillating light' means a light flashing at a rate of 100 to 120 light periods per minute.

A scintillating light is a series of regular light periods per unit time.

8. Signal lights are classified according to their luminous intensity as:
 - ordinary lights,
 - bright lights,
 - strong lights.

Article 1.03

Light sources

'Light sources' means electrical or non-electrical devices designed to produce light fluxes in signal lanterns.

Article 1.04

Optic

1. 'Optic' means a device comprising refracting, reflecting, or refracting and reflecting components, including their holders. The function of these components is to direct the rays from a light source in new specific directions.
2. 'Coloured optic' means an optic which modifies the colour and intensity of the light transmitted.
3. 'Neutral optic' means an optic which modifies the intensity of the light transmitted.

Article 1.05

Filter

1. 'Coloured filter' means a selective filter which modifies the colour and intensity of the light transmitted.
2. 'Neutral filter' means a non-selective component which modifies the intensity of the light transmitted.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 1.06

Relation between I_O , I_B and t

I_O means the photometric luminous intensity in candelas (cd) measured at normal voltage for electric lights.

I_B means the operational luminous intensity in candelas (cd).

t means the range in kilometres (km).

Taking into account, for example, the ageing of the light source, the degree of dirtiness of the optic and variations in the voltage of the on-board grid, I_B is taken as 25 % less than I_O .

Consequently:

$$I_B = 0,75 \cdot I_O$$

The relation between I_B and t of signal lights is given by the following equation:

$$I_B = 0,2 \cdot t^2 \cdot q^{-1}$$

The atmospheric transmission coefficient q is taken as 0,76, corresponding to a meteorological visibility of 14,3 km.

CHAPTER 2

REQUIREMENTS FOR SIGNAL LIGHTS

Article 2.01

Colour of signal lights

1 A five-colour signal system shall apply to the lights, comprising the following colours:

2 The colour boundaries of signal lights shall be demarcated by the coordinates of the intersecting points of the chromatic diagram in IEC publication No 2.2 (TC-1.6) 1975 (see chromaticity diagram) as follows:

Article 2.02

Intensity and range of the signal lights

The table set out below contains the permitted limits for I_O , I_B and t (daytime and nighttime use) according to the nature of the signal lights. The values indicated shall apply to the light flux emitted by the signal lanterns.

I_O and I_B are given in cd and t in km.

MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM VALUES

Nature of the signal lights	Colour of signal light							
	White		Green/red		Yellow		Blue	
	min.	max.	min.	max.	min.	max.	min.	max.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

ordinary	I _O	2.7	10.0	1.2	4.7	1.1	3.2	0.9	2.7
	I _B	2.0	7.5	0.9	3.5	0.8	2.4	0.7	2.0
	t	2.3	3.7	1.7	2.8	1.6	2.5	1.5	2.3
bright	I _O	12.0	33.0	6.7	27.0	4.8	20.0	6.7	27.0
	I _B	9.0	25.0	5.0	20.0	3.6	15.0	5.0	20.0
	t	3.9	5.3	3.2	5.0	2.9	4.6	3.2	5.0
strong	I _O	47.0	133.0			47.0	133.0		
	I _B	35.0	100.0			35.0	100.0		
	t	5.9	8.0			5.9	8.0		

However, for daytime use of the yellow scintillating lights a minimum luminous intensity (I_O) of 900 cd shall apply.

Article 2.03

Signal light dispersion

- 1 Horizontal dispersion of the luminous intensity
- 2 Vertical dispersion of the luminous intensity

CHAPTER 3

REQUIREMENTS FOR SIGNAL LANTERNS

Article 3.01

Technical requirements

- 1 The construction of and materials of signal lanterns and light sources shall be such as to ensure their safety and durability.
- 2 The components of the lanterns (for example, the cross braces) shall not impair the intensity, colours or dispersion of the light.
- 3 It shall be possible to install the signal lanterns on board simply and in the correct position.
- 4 It shall be easy to replace the light source.

CHAPTER 4

TESTS, APPROVAL AND MARKINGS

Article 4.01

Type tests

The type test according to the ‘Conditions for testing and approval of signal lanterns in inland waterway vessels’ is intended to ascertain whether the signal lanterns and their light source meet these requirements.

Article 4.02

Test procedure

- 1 An application for a type test shall be submitted to the competent testing authority, with at least two copies of the plans and two specimens of the lantern as well as the light sources required.
- 2 If the test does not give rise to objections, one copy of the plans accompanying the application, with the approval entered on it, and one of the approved specimen lanterns shall be returned to the applicant. The second copy and second specimen lantern shall be kept by the testing authority.
- 3 The manufacturer shall declare to the testing authority that all the components of the series-produced lantern conform to those of the type-tested lantern.

Article 4.03

Approval certificate

- 1 If the type test shows that these requirements have been met, the signal lantern type shall be approved and an approval certificate based on the model in the Appendix and bearing the markings referred to in Article 4.05 shall be issued to the applicant.
- 2 The holder of the approval certificate:

Article 4.04

Spot checks

- 1 The testing authority shall be empowered to take samples of signal lanterns from the production series for testing.
- 2 If the test reveals serious shortcomings, the approval may be withdrawn.

Article 4.05

Markings

- 1 Approved signal lanterns, optics and light sources shall be marked as indicated below:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- 2 The markings shall be clearly legible and shall be indelibly affixed.
- 3 Markings on the housing shall be such that the signal lantern does not need to be dismantled in order to find them on board. If the optic and housing are inseparable, a marking on the housing shall suffice.
- 4 Only approved signal lanterns, optics and light sources may bear the markings indicated in paragraph 1 above.
- 5 The testing authority shall immediately inform the Committee of the marking assigned.

.....

Textual Amendments

- F3** Inserted by [Council Directive 2008/59/EC of 12 June 2008](#) adapting [Directive 2006/87/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council](#) laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels, by reason of the accession of the Republic of Bulgaria and Romania.


Appendix

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

MODEL APPROVAL CERTIFICATE FOR SIGNAL LANTERNS FOR INLAND WATERWAY VESSELS

The signal lantern
(Description of type, model, and trademark)

is authorised for use in inland waterway vessels within the scope of Directive 2006/87/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 December 2006 laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels and repealing Council Directive 82/714/EEC.

It has been assigned No  e

The components of the lantern shall be marked in conformity with Article 4.05 of Part I of Annex IX to Directive 2006/87/EC.

The holder of the approval shall guarantee, in conformity with Article 4.03 of Part I of Annex IX of Directive 2006/87/EC, that manufacture is undertaken only in conformity with the plans approved by the testing authority and in accordance with the technique used for the type-tested lanterns. Modifications are permitted only with the approval of the testing authority.

Special comments

.....
.....
.....

.....
(Place)

.....
(Date)

.....
(Testing authority)

.....
(Signature)

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

PART II

REQUIREMENTS CONCERNING THE CONDITIONS FOR TESTING AND APPROVAL OF SIGNAL LANTERNS FOR INLAND WATERWAY VESSELS

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL PROVISIONS

Article 1.01

Standard voltages

The standard voltages for signal lanterns for inland waterway vessels shall be 230 V, 115 V, 110 V, 24 V and 12 V. Wherever possible, 24 V appliances should be used.

Article 1.02

Operating requirements

The normal operation of signal lanterns and their accessories shall not be hindered by routine on-board operations. In particular, all the optical components used and major parts for mounting and adjusting them shall be so manufactured that their position, once established, cannot be modified during operation.

Article 1.03

Mounting

The parts for mounting signal lanterns on board shall be so made that, once they have been adjusted, the position of the lanterns, when fixed, cannot be modified during operation.

Article 1.04

Photometric requirements

Signal lanterns shall produce the prescribed dispersion of luminous intensity; the identifying colour of the light and the prescribed intensity shall be obtained as soon as the light is turned on.

Article 1.05

Components

Only components manufactured for the purpose shall be used in signal lanterns.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 1.06

Maintenance

The method of construction of signal lanterns and their accessories shall permit their regular maintenance and, if necessary, enable light sources to be changed easily, even in darkness.

Article 1.07

Safety requirements

Signal lanterns and their accessories shall be so manufactured and proportioned that they can be operated, controlled and monitored without danger to persons.

Article 1.08

Accessories

Lantern accessories shall be so designed and manufactured that their arrangement, mounting and connection shall not hinder the normal use and proper functioning of the lanterns.

Article 1.09

Non-electric signal lanterns

Non-electric lanterns shall be designed and manufactured in conformity with Articles 1.02 to 1.08 of this Chapter and so as to meet the requirements of Chapter 3. The requirements contained in Chapter 2 of these testing and approval conditions shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

Article 1.10

Double lanterns

It shall be possible to use two lanterns mounted one above the other in one housing (double lantern) as a single lantern. Under no circumstances shall the two light sources of a double lantern be used simultaneously.

CHAPTER 2

PHOTOMETRIC AND COLORIMETRIC REQUIREMENTS

Article 2.01

Photometric requirements

1 The photometric specifications for signal lanterns are set out in Part I.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The construction of signal lanterns shall guarantee that the light cannot be reflected or interrupted. The use of reflectors shall not be permitted.

3 In the case of two-colour or three-colour lights, the projection of light of a colour beyond the sector limits prescribed for that colour shall be effectively prevented, including inside the glass.

4 These requirements shall apply mutatis mutandis to non-electric lights.

Article 2.02

Colorimetric requirements

1 The colorimetric specifications for signal lanterns are set out in Part I.

2 The colour of the light emitted by signal lanterns shall be situated, for the temperature of the colour used by the light source, in the appropriate chromatic position established in Part I.

3 The colour of signal lights shall come only from filters (optics, glasses) and optical glasses coloured throughout if the chromatic points of the transmitted light do not diverge by more than 0,01 from their coordinates in the IEC chromaticity diagram. Coloured bulbs shall not be permitted.

4 The transparency of coloured glasses (filters) shall be such that, at the temperature of the light source colour used, the luminous intensity prescribed shall be reached.

5 The reflection of the source light on the parts of the signal lantern shall not be selective, i.e. the trichromatic coordinates x and y of the source used in the signal lantern shall, at the temperature of the colour used, not deviate by more than 0,01 following reflection.

6 Colourless glass shall not, at the temperature of the colour used, selectively influence the light emitted. Similarly, following an extensive operating period, the trichromatic coordinates x and y of the light source used in the signal lantern shall not deviate by more than 0,01, once the light has passed through the glass.

7 The colour of the light of non-electric signal lanterns, at the temperature of the light source used, shall be located in the appropriate chromatic position established in Part I.

8 The colour of the light from non-electric coloured signal lanterns shall come only from silicate glass, coloured throughout. For coloured non-electric lanterns, all the coloured silicate glass shall be such that at the colour temperature nearest the non-electric light source the prescribed luminous intensity shall be reached.

CHAPTER 3

MANUFACTURING REQUIREMENTS

Article 3.01

Electric signal lanterns

1 All the parts of the lanterns shall withstand the particular operational stresses resulting from movement of the vessel, vibrations, corrosion, temperature variations, impacts during loading and navigation in ice and other influences which may be exerted on board.

2 The construction, the materials and the workmanship of the lantern shall guarantee stability and ensure that, after mechanical and thermal stresses and exposure to ultraviolet rays in accordance with these requirements, its performance is unchanged; in particular, the photometric and colorimetric properties shall be preserved.

3 The components exposed to corrosion shall be made of corrosion-resistant materials or be provided with effective protection against corrosion.

4 The materials used shall not be hygroscopic where this would be detrimental to the operation of the installations, appliances and accessories.

5 The materials used shall be highly fire-resistant.

6 The testing authority may grant exemptions concerning the properties of the materials used provided that safety is guaranteed by the manufacture.

7 Signal lanterns shall be tested to ensure their suitability for use on board. The tests shall be divided between environmental and operating requirements.

8 Environmental requirements:

9 Suitability for operation

10 Ambient conditions on board vessels

11 Signal lanterns must pass the environment tests set out in the Appendix.

12 Lantern components made of organic materials shall not be sensitive to ultraviolet radiation.

13 The transparent parts and screens of the lanterns shall be so designed and manufactured that, given normal on-board requirements, extended operation with an excess voltage of 10 % and an ambient temperature of + 45 °C, they are not deformed, altered or destroyed.

14 With extended operation and an excess voltage of 10 % and an ambient temperature of + 60 °C, lanterns shall remain intact on their holders when subjected to a force of 1 000 N (Newton) for eight hours.

15 Lanterns shall be resistant to temporary submersion. During extended operation with an excess voltage of 10 % and an ambient temperature of + 45 °C, they shall not be affected by drenching with the contents of a receptacle containing 10 litres of water at a temperature of + 15 to + 20 °C.

16 The durability of the materials used shall be ensured under operating conditions; in particular, the materials shall be capable of withstanding, during operation, their highest continuous use temperatures.

17 If the lanterns include non-metallic components, their continuous use temperature under on-board conditions at an ambient temperature of + 45 °C shall be determined.

18 For the non-deformability tests of parts at continuous use temperature, the lantern shall be placed in operating position in a slight constant air flow ($v =$ approximately 0,5 m/s) in an ambient temperature of + 45 °C and under on-board conditions. While they are being brought to temperature, and once the operating temperature is reached, the non-metallic parts shall be subjected to a mechanical stress in keeping with their purpose or with possible manipulation thereof. The transparent parts of the lanterns of materials other than silicate glass shall be subjected to the action of a 5 mm x 6 mm metallic punch exerting a continuous force of 6,5 N

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

(equivalent to finger pressure) half way between the upper and lower sides of the transparent part.

19 For the test of the resistance of the components to atmospheric agents, lanterns with non-metallic components exposed to the elements shall be placed in a climatic chamber, for 12 consecutive hours alternately in an atmosphere of 45 °C and 95 % relative humidity and an atmosphere of — 20 °C, and operated intermittently under on-board conditions, so that they are exposed to hot-humid and cold cycles and to changes from low to high temperatures for periods corresponding to their operating times.

20 The parts of lanterns within easy reach shall not, in an ambient temperature of + 45 °C, reach temperatures higher than + 70 °C when they are made of metal or + 85 °C if they are not made of metal.

21 Lanterns shall be designed and manufactured according to accepted standards and comply, in particular, with IEC publication 598, part 1, 'Ships, lights — General specifications and tests'. The requirements of the following paragraphs shall be met:

22 Electric wiring shall normally have a cross-section of not less than 1,5 mm². The wire used for the connection shall be at least of type HO 7 RN-F or equivalent.

23 The type of lantern protection for explosion danger zones shall be established and certified for the purpose by the competent testing authorities.

24 The method of manufacture of the lanterns shall make provision for:

25 All lanterns to be installed shall be accompanied by positioning and installation instructions indicating where the light is to be mounted, and the purpose and the type of interchangeable parts. It shall be possible to position movable lanterns easily and safely.

26 The required mounts shall be such that, in its intended position, the horizontal plane of symmetry of the lantern is parallel to the water line of the vessel.

27 The following marks shall be placed clearly and durably on each lantern, at a point remaining visible after installation on board:

Article 3.02

Filters and optical glasses

1 Filters (optics and glasses) and optical glasses may be made of organic glass (synthetic glass) or inorganic glass (silicate glass).

2 Filters and optical glasses shall as far as possible be free of blisters, bubbles and impurities. There shall be no surface defects such as unpolished (matt) sections, deep scratches, etc.

3 Filters and optical glasses shall meet the requirements of Article 3.01. Their photometric and colorimetric properties shall not be affected by those conditions.

4 The red and green optical glasses of the side lights shall not be interchangeable.

5 In addition to the manufacturer's mark, the approval number and the type description shall be legibly and durably marked on filters and optical glasses at a point remaining visible once they have been placed in the lanterns.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 3.03

Electric light sources

- 1 Only filament lamps manufactured for the purpose shall be used in signal lanterns. They shall be available in the standard voltages. Exceptions may be permitted in special cases.
- 2 It shall be possible to install filament lamps only in the intended position in signal lanterns. A maximum of two unequivocal positions shall be permitted in signal lanterns. Incorrect and intermediate positions shall not be possible. For the test, the less favourable position shall be selected.
- 3 Filament lamps shall have no special features which adversely affect their efficiency, such as scratches or stains on the bulk or faulty positioning of the filament.
- 4 The operating colour temperature of filament lamps shall not be less than 2 360 K.
- 5 The mountings and lamp holders used shall meet the special requirements of the optical system and withstand the mechanical stresses of on-board operations.
- 6 The cap of the filament lamp shall be strong and solidly attached to the bulk so that after operating for 100 hours at an excess voltage of 10 % it withstands uniform rotation with a moment of 25 kgcm.
- 7 The trademark, the rated voltage and the power rating and/or the rated luminous intensity as well as the approval number shall be marked legibly and durably on the bulk or on the cap of filament lamps.
- 8 Filament lamps shall meet the following tolerances:

CHAPTER 4

TEST AND APPROVAL PROCEDURE

Article 4.01

General rules of procedure

Part I shall be applicable for the test and approval procedure.

Article 4.02

Application

- 1 The following data and documents as well as samples of the lanterns and of their accessories, if any, shall be attached to the application for approval submitted by the manufacturer or his authorised representative:
- 2 Two samples ready for use shall be supplied with the application, each with 10 light sources of each rated voltage and, where relevant, five coloured filters of each signal colour, together with the mounting or positioning device.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

3 The sample shall correspond in all respects to the production models envisaged. It shall be fitted with all the accessories required for mounting and positioning it in the normal operating position in which it is to be used on board in accordance with its purpose. Some accessories may be omitted if the competent testing authority agrees.

4 Additional samples, documents and data shall be supplied on request.

5 The documents shall be submitted in the language of the country of the testing and approval authority.

6 If an application for approval is submitted for an additional device, paragraphs 1 to 5 shall apply *mutatis mutandis*, on the understanding that the additional parts may be approved only in combination with the approved lanterns.

7 Sector lights shall in principle be submitted as a complete set.

Article 4.03

Test

1 For tests on a new or amended version of an approved lantern or accessory, it shall be ascertained whether the sample meets the requirements of these test and approval conditions and corresponds to the documents referred to in Article 4.02(1)(f).

2 The approval test shall be based on the conditions occurring on board the vessels. The test shall cover all light sources, optical glasses and accessories which must be provided and which are intended for the signal lanterns.

3 The photometric and colorimetric test shall be carried out at the rated voltage.

4 Parts or accessories shall be tested only with the type of lantern for which they are intended.

5 Tests done by other competent authorities may be accepted as proof of conformity with the requirements of Chapter 3, provided that they have been confirmed as equivalent to the tests set out in the Appendix.

Article 4.04

Approval

1 Approval of signal lanterns shall be based on Articles 4.01 to 4.05 of Part I.

2 For lanterns and accessories which are or will be mass-produced, the approval may be issued to the applicant following a test at the applicant's expense if the applicant guarantees that proper use will be made of the rights resulting from the approval.

3 In the event of approval, the approval certificate referred to in Article 4.03 of Part I shall be issued for the corresponding lantern type and an approval marking in accordance with Article 4.05 of Part I shall be allocated.

4 Approval may be granted for a limited period and subject to conditions.

5 Modifications of an approved lantern and additions to approved lanterns shall be subject to the agreement of the testing authority.

6 If approval of a lantern is withdrawn, the applicant shall be informed directly.

7 One sample of each type of lantern approved shall be left with the testing authority which approved it.

Article 4.05

Cessation of validity of the approval

1 The approval shall cease to be valid on the expiry of the prescribed period, or if it is revoked or withdrawn.

2 The approval may be revoked if:

3 If manufacture of an approved signal lantern type is discontinued, the testing authority which issued the approval shall be informed immediately.

4 Withdrawal or revocation of approval shall mean that use of the approval number allocated is prohibited.

5 Once the approval ceases to be valid the certificate shall be submitted for annulment to the testing authority which issued it.

Appendix Environment tests

1. Test concerning protection against splashing water and dust

1.1. The type of lantern protection shall be guaranteed in accordance with classification IP 55 of the IEC publication — Part 598-1.

The test concerning protection of the sample against splashing water and against dust, and the evaluation of the results, shall be carried out in conformity with IEC publication 529, classification IP 55.

The first ‘5’ stands for protection against dust. This means: full dust-proof protection of live components and protection against harmful deposits of dust. The penetration of dust is not completely prevented.

The second ‘5’ stands for protection against splashing water. This means that a water jet aimed at the lantern from all directions shall have no damaging effect.

1.2. The protection of the sample against water is evaluated as follows: the protection is considered to be adequate if any water which has entered has no detrimental effect on operation of the sample.

No water deposits shall have formed on the insulating materials, if this means that minimum vanishing point values could not be achieved. Live components shall not be wetted and shall not be affected by any water accumulating inside the lantern.

2. Humid atmosphere test

2.1. Purpose and application

This test is to determine the action of humid heat and of humidity during a change of temperature, as described in Article 3.01(10)(b), during operation or during transport or storage, on nautical installations, appliances and instruments, given that they could experience surface humidity from condensation.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

This condensation is similar in the case of non-enclosed components to the action of a dust deposit or of a hygroscopic salt film forming during operation.

The following specification is based on IEC publication 68, Part 2-30 in conjunction with Article 3.01(10)(a) and (b). Additional information can be found in the publication.

Components and groups of components submitted non-enclosed for approval as type models shall be tested in that non-enclosed state or, if this is not possible given the nature of the components, by providing them with the minimum protection devices which the applicant considers necessary for use on board.

2.2. Execution

1. The test is conducted in a test chamber in which, if necessary by means of an air circulation device, the temperature and level of humidity are practically the same at all points. The movement of the air shall not noticeably cool the sample being tested, but should be sufficient to ensure that the prescribed values for air temperature and humidity are maintained in its immediate vicinity.

Condensate shall be continuously evacuated from the test chamber. No condensate shall drip on to the sample. Condensate may only be reused for humidification following reprocessing, in particular once chemicals from the sample have been eliminated.

2. The sample shall not be exposed to heat radiation from the heating of the chamber.
3. The sample shall have been out of service immediately prior to the test long enough for all its parts to be at ambient temperature.
4. The sample is placed in a test chamber at an ambient temperature of $+ 25 \pm 10$ °C corresponding to its normal use on board.
5. The chamber is closed. The air temperature is set at -25 ± 3 °C and the relative humidity at 45 to 75 % and those conditions are maintained until the sample has reached the same temperature.
6. The relative humidity of the air is raised to not less than 95 % in a maximum time of one hour, the air temperature remaining unchanged. This increase may take place during the last hour of temperature conditioning of the sample.
7. The air temperature in the chamber is increased progressively to $+40 \pm 2$ °C over a period of $3 \text{ h} \pm 0,5 \text{ h}$. As the temperature rises, the relative humidity of the air is maintained at not less than 95 %, and at not less than 90 % during the last 15 minutes. During this temperature rise, the sample becomes damp.
8. The air temperature is maintained at $+ 40 \pm 2$ °C for a time period of $12 \text{ h} \pm 0,5 \text{ h}$ measured from the start of phase 7, with a relative air humidity of 93 ± 3 %. During the first 15 and the last 15 minutes of the period during which the temperature is $+ 40 \pm 2$ °C, relative air humidity may be between 90 and 100 %.
9. The air temperature is reduced to $+ 25 \pm 3$ °C over a period of three to six hours. The relative humidity of the air must be constantly maintained at over 80 %.
10. The air temperature is maintained at $+ 25 \pm 3$ °C for a period of 24 hours from the start of phase 7, relative air humidity remaining constantly above 95 %.
11. Phase 7 is repeated.
12. Phase 8 is repeated.

13. Not earlier than 10 hours after the start of phase 12 the air conditioning equipment of the sample is switched on. When the climatic data indicated by the manufacturer for the sample have been obtained, the sample is put into operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and at the rated voltage of the on-board network, with a tolerance of $\pm 3\%$.
14. After the time necessary to achieve normal operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions has elapsed, the functions are checked and the operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted. If the chamber needs to be opened for this purpose, it shall be reclosed as quickly as possible.

If more than 30 minutes are required to reach normal operation, this phase shall be extended sufficiently so that, once the operating state has been reached, at least 30 minutes are available to monitor the functions and measure the operating data.

15. Within a period of one to three hours, with the sample again in service, the air temperature is lowered to ambient temperature, with a tolerance of $\pm 3\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, and the relative humidity of the air to under 75 %.
16. The chamber is opened and the sample exposed to the normal temperature and humidity of the ambient air.
17. After 3 hours, and when all humidity visible on the sample has evaporated, the functions of the sample are monitored again, and operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted.
18. The sample is subjected to a visual inspection. The body of the lantern is opened and the interior examined for any effects of the climatic test and for residual condensate.

2.3. Results to be obtained

- 2.3.1. The sample shall function normally under the conditions stipulated in phases 12 to 18. No deterioration shall be observed.
- 2.3.2. The operating data for phases 12 and 18 shall be within the tolerances permitted for the sample on the basis of these test and approval conditions.
- 2.3.3. There shall be no corrosion or no residual condensate inside the lantern which, as a result of the long-term action of high atmospheric humidity, might cause it to malfunction.

3. Cold test

3.1. Purpose

This test is to determine the action of cold during operation or during transport and storage, in accordance with Article 3.01(8) and (10). Additional information may be found in IEC publication 68, Part 3-1.

3.2. Execution

1. The test is carried out in a test chamber in which, if necessary by means of an air circulation device, the temperature is practically the same at all points. The air humidity must be low enough to ensure that the sample is not wetted by condensation during any of the phases.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2. The sample is placed in a test chamber at an ambient temperature of $+ 25 \pm 10 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$ corresponding to its normal use on board.
3. The temperature in the chamber is lowered to $- 25 \pm 3 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$ at a rate of not more than $45 \text{ }^\circ\text{C/h}$.
4. The temperature in the chamber is maintained at $- 25 \pm 3 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$ until the sample has reached temperature equilibrium, plus at least a further 2 hours.
5. The temperature in the chamber is raised to $0 \pm 2 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$ at a rate of not more than $45 \text{ }^\circ\text{C/h}$.

For all samples referred to in Article 3.01(10)(a), the following also applies:

6. During the last hour of phase (4) in climate class X, the sample is put into operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, at the rated voltage of the on-board network, with a tolerance of $\pm 3 \%$. The heat sources contained in the sample must be in operation.

After the time necessary to achieve normal operation has elapsed, the functions are checked and the operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted.

7. The temperature in the chamber is raised to ambient temperature at a rate of not more than $45 \text{ }^\circ\text{C/h}$.
8. Once the sample has reached temperature equilibrium, the chamber is opened.
9. The functions of the sample are checked again and the operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted.

3.3. Results to be obtained

The sample shall function normally under the conditions stipulated in phases 7, 8 and 9. No deterioration shall be observed.

The operating data for phases 7 and 9 shall be within the tolerances permitted for the sample on the basis of these test and approval conditions.

4. Heat test

4.1. Purpose and application

This test is to determine the action of heat during operation, transport and storage, in accordance with Article 3.01(8)(a) and (10)(a). The following specification is based on IEC publication 68, Part 2-2 in conjunction with Article 3.01(10)(a). Additional information can be found in the IEC publication.

	Normal	Extreme
	Environment tests	
Climate classes X and S	$+ 55 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$	$+ 70 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$
	Permissible tolerance $\pm 2 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$	

The test under extreme ambient conditions shall, in principle, be performed first. If the operating data are within the tolerances applicable under normal ambient conditions, the normal ambient test may be dispensed with.

4.2. Execution

1. The test is conducted in a test chamber in which, if necessary by means of an air circulation device, the temperature is practically the same at all points. The movement of the air shall not noticeably cool the sample being tested. The sample shall not be exposed to heat radiation from the heating of the chamber. The air humidity must be low enough to ensure that the sample is not wetted by condensation during any of the phases.
2. The sample is placed in a test chamber at a temperature of $+ 25 \pm 10$ °C corresponding to its normal use on board. The sample is put into operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the rated voltage of the on-board network with a tolerance of ± 3 %.

After the time necessary to achieve normal operation has elapsed, the functions are checked and the operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted.

3. The air temperature in the chamber is raised to the test temperature referred to in Article 3.01(10)(a) at a rate of not more than 45 °C/h.
4. The air temperature is maintained at the test temperature until the sample reaches temperature equilibrium plus a further two hours.

During the last two hours, the functions are checked again and the operating data recorded and noted.

5. The temperature is lowered to ambient temperature over a period of not less than one hour. The chamber is then opened.

After bringing the sample to ambient temperature, the functions are again checked and the operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted.

4.3. Results to be obtained

The sample shall function normally under the conditions stipulated in all phases of the test. No deterioration shall be observed. The operating data for phases (2), (4) and (5) shall be within the tolerances permitted for the sample for normal ambient environment tests on the basis of these test and approval conditions.

5. Vibration test

5.1. Purpose and application

This test is to determine the functional and structural effects of the vibrations referred to in Article 3.01(10)(e). Structural effects concern the performance of the mechanical components, particularly vibrations by resonance and stress on materials leading to fatigue without necessarily producing direct effects on operation or changes in operating data.

The functional effects directly concern the operation and operating data of the sample. They may be linked to structural effects.

The following specification is based on IEC publication 68, Part 2-6 in conjunction with Article 3.01(10)(e). Values deviating from those in the abovementioned provisions are indicated by *. Additional information may be found in IEC publication 68, Part 2-6.

Test requirements:

The test shall be conducted with sinusoidal vibrations using the following frequencies with the amplitudes indicated:

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

	Normal	Extreme
	Environment tests	
Vibration class V:		
Frequencies	2 to 10 Hz	2 to 13,2 Hz*
Amplitude	± 1,6 mm	± 1,6 mm
Frequencies	10 to 100 Hz	13,2 to 100 Hz*
Acceleration amplitude	± 7 m/s ²	± 11 m/s ²

The test under extreme ambient conditions shall, in principle, be performed first. If the operating data are within the tolerances applicable under normal ambient conditions, the normal ambient test may be dispensed with.

Samples intended to be used with shock-absorbing devices shall be tested with those devices. If, in exceptional cases, it is not possible to test with the shock-absorbers intended for normal operation, the appliances shall be tested without shock-absorbers and the stress modified to take account of the action of the shock-absorber.

A test without shock-absorbers is also acceptable for the determination of characteristic frequencies.

The vibration test shall be conducted in three main directions perpendicular to each other. For samples which on account of their construction may be subject to special stresses from vibrations at an oblique angle to the main directions, the test shall also be performed in the directions of special sensitivity.

5.2. Execution

1. Test apparatus

The test is conducted using a vibrating device known as a vibrating table, which enables the sample to be subjected to mechanical vibrations in accordance with the following conditions:

- The basic movement shall be sinusoidal and such that the mounting points of the sample basically move in phase and along parallel lines.
- The maximum amplitude of vibration of the lateral movement of any mounting point shall not exceed 25 % of the specified amplitude of the basic movement.
- The relative importance of the spurious vibration, expressed by the formula

$$d = \frac{\sqrt{a_{tot}^2 - a_1^2}}{a_1} \cdot 100$$

(in %)

where a_1 is the effective value of the acceleration produced by the frequency applied, and where a_{tot} is the effective value of the total acceleration, including a_1 , measured in the frequencies < 5 000 Hz,

shall not exceed 25 % at the mounting point taken as the point of reference for measurement of the acceleration.

- The vibration amplitude shall not differ from its theoretical value by more than:
 - ± 15 % at the mounting point taken as the point of reference and
 - ± 25 % at any other mounting point.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

In order to determine the characteristic frequencies, it must be possible to adjust the vibration amplitude in small steps between zero and the theoretical value.

— The vibration frequency shall not differ from its theoretical value by more than

± 0,05 Hz	for frequencies up to 0,25 Hz,
± 20%	for frequencies higher than 0,25 Hz and up to 5 Hz,
± 1Hz	for frequencies higher than 5 Hz and up to 50 Hz,
± 2%	for frequencies higher than 50 Hz,

In order to compare the characteristic frequencies, it must be possible to adjust them at the beginning and end of the vibration test to within:

± 0,05 Hz for frequencies up to 0,5 Hz,	
± 10%	± 0,5 Hz for frequencies up to 5 Hz,
	± 0,5 Hz for frequencies higher than 5 Hz and up to 100 Hz,
± 0,5% for frequencies higher than 100 Hz.	

In order to scan the frequencies, it should be possible for the vibration frequency to vary continuously and exponentially in both directions between the lower and upper limits of the frequency ranges indicated in paragraph 5.1, with a scanning speed of 1 octave/minute ± 10 %.

In order to determine the characteristic frequencies, it must be possible to slow the speed of variation of the vibration frequency as desired.

— The intensity of the magnetic field created by the vibration device in the vicinity of the sample should not exceed 20 kA/m. The testing authority may require lower permissible values for some samples.

2. First inspection, mounting and putting into service

The sample is inspected visually to verify that it is in impeccable condition as far as is apparent, and that the assembly is impeccable from the point of view of the construction of all the components and groups of components.

The sample is mounted on the vibrating table in accordance with the type of mount provided for on-board installation. Samples, the operation and performance of which under the influence of vibrations depend on their position in relation to the vertical, shall be tested in their normal operating position. The mounts and devices used for the mounting shall not noticeably modify the amplitude and the movements of the sample in the range of frequencies used in the test.

The sample is put into operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the rated voltage of the on-board network with a tolerance of ± 3 %.

After the time necessary to achieve normal operation has elapsed, the functions are checked and the operating data of importance for use on board recorded and noted.

3. Preliminary inspection of performance when subjected to vibrations

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

This test phase shall be conducted for all samples. For samples which may be used for different purposes with varying vibratory effects, the test shall be conducted for all or some of the various uses.

A frequency cycle is effected with the vibrating table so that the frequency range indicated in paragraph 5.1, with its corresponding amplitudes, is covered from the lowest frequency to the highest and conversely, at a rate of one octave per minute. The sample is observed during this operation using the appropriate means of measurement and visually, if necessary using a stroboscope, to check thoroughly for any operating problems, modifications of operating data and mechanical phenomena such as vibrations by resonance and rattling noises occurring in specific frequencies. These frequencies are described as 'characteristic'.

If necessary, in order to determine characteristic frequencies and vibration effects, the frequency variation is slowed down, stopped or reversed and the amplitude of the vibrations reduced. During the gradual modification of the operating data, it is necessary to wait until the final value is reached while maintaining the vibration frequency, although not more than five minutes.

During the frequency scan, at least the frequencies and operating data of importance for use on board are recorded, and all characteristic frequencies are noted, with their effects, for subsequent comparison during phase (7).

If the response of the sample to mechanical vibrations cannot be adequately determined during operation, an additional vibration response test shall be performed without connecting the sample.

If during the frequency scan the operational data noticeably exceed the permissible tolerances, the operation is unacceptably disrupted or if the structural resonance vibrations are likely to cause destruction should the vibration test be continued, the test may be interrupted.

4. Test of switching functions

This test phase shall be conducted for all samples where vibratory stress may influence switching functions, for example relays.

The sample is subjected to vibrations in the frequency ranges indicated in paragraph 5.1 with frequency variation steps in accordance with the E-12 series⁽¹⁵⁾ and the corresponding amplitudes. At each frequency step, all switching functions which may be sensitive to vibration, if necessary including switching-on and switching-off, are carried out at least twice.

Switching functions may also be tested at frequencies occurring between the E-12 series values.

5. Extended test

This test phase shall be conducted for all samples. For samples which may be used for different purposes with varying vibratory effects, the first part of this phase (when the sample is in service) may be conducted several times, for all or some of the various uses.

When the sample is in service as described in phase (2) above, it is subjected to five cycles during which the frequency range indicated as stress producing in paragraph 5.1, with the corresponding amplitudes, is covered each time from the lowest to the highest frequency and conversely, at a rate of one octave per minute.

After the fifth cycle, the vibrating table may be stopped, the functions are tested and the operating data of importance for on-board use recorded and noted.

6. Fixed frequency extended test

This test phase shall be conducted if, on examining vibratory performance during phase (3) above, mechanical resonances are observed during the scan of the frequency range above 5 Hz, which are acceptable for extended use on board according to the manufacturer or his authorised representative, but for which the strength of the parts concerned cannot be taken for granted. In particular, this phase concerns appliances fitted with shock absorbers with a resonance frequency within the frequency range indicated in paragraph 5.1 and higher than 5 Hz.

When the sample is in service as described in phase 2 above, for each resonance frequency concerned, it is subjected for two hours to vibrations at the amplitude provided for in the extreme ambient test and at the corresponding frequency as referred to in paragraph 5.1, the direction of vibration being that which in normal use exerts the maximum stress on the parts in question. If necessary, the frequency applied must be rectified so that the resonance vibrations continue at not less than 70 % of their maximum amplitude, or the frequency must be made to vary continuously between two values 2 % below and 2 % above the resonance frequency initially observed, at a rate of at least 0,1 but not more than 1 octave per minute. During the vibratory stress, the functions of the sample are monitored until malfunctions begin to occur, as a result of mechanical parts becoming detached or displaced or of a break in the electrical connection or of a short-circuit.

Samples for which the execution of this test phase is relevant when switched off may be tested in that state, provided the mechanical stress on the parts concerned is not less than in normal use.

7. Final inspection of performance when subjected to vibration

This test phase must be effected as necessary.

The inspection of performance when subjected to vibrations referred to in phase 3 is repeated using the frequencies and amplitudes applied in that phase. The characteristic frequencies observed and the observed effects of vibration stress are compared with the results of phase 3 in order to determine any changes which occurred during the vibration test.

8. Conclusions of the inspection

Once the vibrating table has stopped and the time necessary to arrive at an operating state without vibratory stress has elapsed, the functions are tested and the operating data of importance for on-board use recorded and noted.

Lastly, the sample is inspected visually to verify that it is in impeccable condition.

5.3. Results to be obtained

The sample and its components and groups of components should not show any mechanical resonance vibrations in the frequency ranges indicated in paragraph 5.1. When resonance vibrations of this type are unavoidable, construction measures must be taken to ensure that the sample, its components and groups of components suffer no damage.

During and following the vibration test, no perceptible effect of vibratory stress shall occur, and in particular no difference between the characteristic frequencies observed in phase 7 and the values determined in phase 3 and no damage or malfunction as a result of extended vibration shall be observed.

In the case of the normal ambient test, the operating data recorded in phases 3 to 8 shall remain within the tolerances permitted on the basis of these test and approval conditions.

During the switching functions test in phase 4, no switching malfunction or breakdown shall occur.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

6. Accelerated weather resistance test

6.1. Purpose and application

The accelerated weather resistance test (simulation of exposure to the elements through exposure to radiation from xenon lamps with filters and by sprinkling) is conducted in accordance with Parts 2-3, 2-5 and 2-9 of IEC publication 68 plus the following additions:

According to this publication, the accelerated weather resistance test aims at simulating natural weather conditions by means of a test apparatus under specific reproducible conditions, so as to provoke rapid changes in the properties of the materials.

The accelerated test is carried out in a test apparatus with filtered radiation from xenon lamps and intermittent sprinkling. Following exposure to the elements, measured by the product of the intensity of radiation and its duration, the agreed properties of the samples are compared with those of samples of the same origin which have not been exposed to the elements. First to be specified are the properties crucial for practical use, such as colour, surface quality, shock resistance, tensile strength and solidity.

In order to compare the results with those of exposure to natural weather conditions, it is assumed that the alteration of properties by the elements is caused in particular by natural radiation and the simultaneous action of oxygen, water and heat on the materials.

For the accelerated test, particular account must be taken of the fact that the radiation in the appliance is very close to natural radiation (see the IEC publication). The radiation from the xenon lamp with a special filter simulates natural radiation.

Experience has shown that, under the test conditions indicated, there is a strong correlation between resistance to weather in the accelerated test and resistance to natural weather conditions. The accelerated test, which is independent of place, climate and season, has the advantage over natural weather conditions of being reproducible and of making it possible to shorten the duration of the test as it is independent of the alternation of day and night and of the seasons.

6.2. Number of samples

For the weather-resistance test, unless otherwise agreed, an adequate number of samples is used. An adequate number of samples not subjected to weather conditions is required for the purposes of comparison.

6.3. Preparation of samples

The samples are subjected to the tests in the state in which they are delivered, unless otherwise agreed. The samples to be used for comparison are kept in the dark at ambient temperature throughout the tests.

6.4. Test apparatus

The test apparatus consists basically of a ventilated test chamber with the radiation source in the centre. Optical filters are placed round the radiation source. The sample mounts are rotated around the longitudinal axis of the system at the required distance from the source and the filters to reach the intensity of radiation prescribed in paragraph 6.4.1.

The intensity of the radiation on any component of the total sample surfaces exposed shall not differ by more than $\pm 10\%$ from the arithmetical mean of radiation intensity on the various surfaces.

6.4.1. Radiation source

A xenon lamp is used as the radiation source. The radiation flux shall be selected so that the intensity of radiation on the sample surface is $1\,000 \pm 200 \text{ W} \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ in the 300 to 830 nm waveband (see paragraph 6.9 for the apparatus for measuring irradiation).

If air-cooled xenon lamps are used, the air already used containing ozone must not enter the test chamber and must be evacuated separately.

The experimental values show that the radiation flux from xenon lamps drops to 80 % of its initial value after approximately 1 500 hours of operation; after this period, the proportion of ultra-violet radiation is also reduced noticeably compared with other forms of radiation. The xenon lamp must therefore be replaced after this period (see also the data supplied by the xenon lamp manufacturer).

6.4.2. Optical filters

Optical filters must be positioned between the radiation source and the sample mounts so that the filtered radiation from the xenon lamps is as close as possible to natural radiation (see IEC publication 68, Parts 2 to 9).

All glass filters must be cleaned regularly to avoid any undesirable decrease in radiation intensity. The filters must be replaced if the similarity to natural radiation can no longer be achieved.

With regard to appropriate optical filters, the data supplied by the manufacturer of the test apparatus must be complied with. On delivery of test apparatus, the manufacturer must guarantee that it meets the requirements set out in paragraph 6.4.

6.5. Sprinkling and air humidifying device

The sample shall be wetted in such a way that the action is the same as that of natural rain and dew. The sample sprinkling device shall be so constructed that during sprinkling all the external surfaces of the samples are wetted. It must be controlled in such a way that the sprinkling/dry-period cycle prescribed in paragraph 6.10.3 is complied with. The air in the test chamber must be humidified so as to maintain the relative humidity prescribed in paragraph 6.10.3. The water used for sprinkling and for humidifying the air must be distilled water or fully desalinated water (conductivity $< 5 \mu\text{S/cm}$).

The tanks, pipes and sprayers for distilled or fully desalinated water must be of corrosion-resistant materials. The relative humidity of the air in the test chamber is measured using a hygrometer protected against sprinkling and direct radiation and is adjusted by means of the hygrometer.

When fully desalinated water or water in a closed circuit is used the risk exists (as in the varnish test) of the formation of a deposit on the surface of the samples or of wear on the surface by substances in suspension.

6.6. Ventilation device

The temperature of the black panel prescribed in paragraph 6.10.2 is maintained in the test chamber by the circulation of clean, filtered, humidified and, if necessary, temperature-controlled air over the samples. The flow and speed of the air shall be selected so as to ensure uniform tempering of all external surfaces of the mounts of the samples in the system.

6.7. Sample mounts

Any mounts in stainless steel enabling the samples to be mounted as set out in paragraph 6.10.1 may be used.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

6.8. Blackpanel thermometer

In order to measure the temperature of the black panel during the dry period of the cycle, a blackpanel thermometer is used. This thermometer consists of a stainless steel panel thermally insulated from its mounts, the same size as the sample mounts and $0,9 \pm 0,1$ mm thick. The two sides of the panel are covered with shiny black varnish which is highly weather-resistant and has a maximum reflecting power of 5 % at wave-lengths of more than 780 nm. The temperature of the panel is measured using a bimetallic thermometer the sensor of which is placed in the middle of the panel with a good thermal contact.

It is not advisable to leave the thermometer in the apparatus throughout the test referred to in paragraph 6.10. It is sufficient for it to be inserted into the test apparatus every 250 hours, for 30 minutes or so, and for the temperature of the black panel to be taken during the dry period.

6.9. Irradiation measuring apparatus

Irradiation (unit of measurement: $W \cdot s \cdot m^{-2}$) is the product of the intensity of irradiation (unit: $W \cdot m^{-2}$) and duration of irradiation (unit: s). The irradiation of the surfaces of the sample in the test apparatus is measured with an appropriate irradiation measuring apparatus, adapted to the radiation function of the system consisting of the radiation source and the filter. The irradiation measuring apparatus shall be graduated or calibrated so that infra-red radiation over 830 nm is not taken into account.

The capacity of the irradiation measuring apparatus depends basically on whether its sensor is highly resistant to weather and to ageing and has adequate spectral sensitivity to natural radiation.

The irradiation measuring apparatus may include the following parts, for example:

- (a) a silicon photo-electric cell as radiation sensor;
- (b) an optical filter placed in front of the photo-electric cell; and
- (c) a coulometer which measures the product (unit: $C = A \cdot s$) of the intensity of the current produced in the photo-electric cell in proportion to radiation intensity (unit: A) and the duration of radiation (unit: s).

The scale of the irradiation measuring apparatus shall be calibrated. The calibration shall be checked after being used for a year and corrected if necessary.

The intensity of irradiation on the surface of samples depends on the distance from the radiation source. Sample surfaces shall therefore, as far as possible, be at the same distance from the source as the sensor of the irradiation measuring apparatus. If this is not possible, the irradiation reading on the measuring apparatus shall be multiplied by a correction factor.

6.10. Execution

- 6.10.1. The samples are placed in mounts so that water cannot collect on the rear surface. The sample mounts must cause only the smallest possible amount of mechanical stress. In order to ensure irradiation and sprinkling are as evenly distributed as possible, the samples are rotated during the test at a rate of one to five revolutions per minute round the source-filter system and the sprinkling device. Normally, a single side of the sample is exposed to the weather conditions. Depending on the applicable provisions of the IEC publication, or as otherwise agreed, the front and back surfaces of a single sample may also be exposed. In this case, each surface is exposed to the same radiation and the same sprinkling.

The exposure of the front and back surfaces of a given sample to the same radiation and sprinkling may be produced by the periodic rotation of the sample. This can be done automatically using rotating appliances if the mount is in the form of an open frame.

- 6.10.2. The temperature of the black panel at the point where the samples are placed during the dry period is set and regulated in accordance with the IEC publications applicable to the equipment in question. Unless otherwise agreed, the average temperature of the black panel must be kept at + 45 °C. Average temperature of the black panel means the arithmetic mean of the black panel temperature reached at the end of the dry period. During the dry period, a local difference of ± 5 °C is permissible, and ± 3 °C in borderline cases.

In order to maintain the required temperature of the black panel and, when necessary, ensure radiation of equal intensity on the front and back surfaces of the sample (see paragraph 6.10.1), the samples may be turned automatically through 180° after each revolution. In this case, the blackpanel thermometer and the irradiation measuring apparatus shall be included in the rotation movement.

- 6.10.3. Samples installed in mounts and the sensor of the irradiation measuring apparatus referred to in paragraph 6.9 are evenly exposed to radiation and sprinkled according to the cycle defined below, which is repeated successively:

Sprinkling : 3 minutes
Dry period: : 17 minutes

The relative humidity of the air must be 60 to 80 % during the dry period.

6.11. Test duration and procedure

The test follows procedure B in IEC publication 68, Part 2-9. The test duration is 720 hours, with the sprinkling cycle defined in paragraph 6.10.3.

It is recommended that the weather-resistance test should be carried out with one and the same sample (in the case of a non-destructive test of the modification of the properties to be considered, such as the weather-resistance test, for example) or with several samples (in the case of a destructive test, as for shock-resistance, for example) at various degrees of irradiation, to be agreed upon. The development of the modification of the properties of a piece of equipment throughout the weather test can therefore be determined.

6.12. Assessment

After the exposure to bad weather is completed, the sample is kept for at least 24 hours in darkness in an air temperature of +23 °C, a dew point of +12 °C, a relative air humidity of 50 %, an air circulation speed of 1 m/s and an atmospheric pressure of 860 to 1060 hPa. (The permissible difference may be ± 2 °C for the air temperature and ± 6 % for the relative humidity.)

These samples and those used for the comparison referred to in paragraphs 6.2 and 6.3 are inspected to determine properties in accordance with the requirements indicated in Article 2.01(1) and (2) and in Article 3.01(12).

7. Salt water and weather-resistance test

(sea-fog test)

7.1. Purpose and application

This test is to determine the action of salt water and a saline atmosphere during operation and during transport and storage in accordance with Article 3.01.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

It may be restricted to the sample or to specimens of the materials used.

The following specifications are based on IEC publication 68, Part 2-52. Additional information can be found in the publication.

7.2. Execution

1. Test apparatus

The test is conducted in a test chamber using an atomiser and a saline solution meeting the following conditions:

- the materials of the test chamber and the atomiser must not influence the corrosive action of the salt mist,
- a fine, homogeneous, wet, thick mist must be diffused inside the test chamber; the distribution must not be affected by eddies or by the presence of the sample. The jet must not touch the sample directly. Drops forming on the inside of the chamber must not be able to fall on the sample;
- the test chamber must be adequately ventilated and the ventilation outlet protected against sudden changes in the movement of the air, so as to prevent the formation of a strong air current in the chamber,
- the saline solution used must consist, by mass, of 5 ± 1 parts of pure sodium chloride, with a maximum of 0,1 % sodium iodide and 0,3 % impurities, in the dry state, to 95 ± 1 parts of distilled or fully desalinated water. Its pH must be between 6,5 and 7,2 at a temperature of $+ 20 \pm 2$ °C and be kept within these limits during the operation. Solution once sprayed must not be reused,
- the compressed air used for spraying must be free of impurities such as oil or dust and shall have a humidity level of at least 85 % in order to avoid blockage of the nozzle,
- the mist diffused in the chamber must have a density such that, in a clean receptacle with an open horizontal surface area of 80 cm², placed anywhere in the chamber, the average precipitation over the whole time is between 1.0 ml and 2.0 ml per hour. In order to monitor the density of the mist, at least two receptacles shall be placed in the chamber in such a way as not to be covered by the sample and not to receive drops of condensation. In order to calibrate the quantity of solution sprayed, the duration of spraying shall be at least eight hours,

the period of humidity between phases of spraying is spent in an air-conditioned chamber in which the air can be kept at a temperature of $+ 40 \pm 2$ °C and at a relative humidity of 93 ± 3 %.

2. Preliminary inspection

The sample is inspected visually to verify that it is in impeccable condition, and in particular that it is correctly assembled and that all openings close properly. External surfaces soiled with grease, oil or mud are cleaned. All controls and moving parts are manipulated and checked for proper operation. The mobility of all closures, covers and moving parts intended to be detached or moved during operation or maintenance must be inspected for mobility and correctly replaced.

The sample is put into operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the rated voltage of the on-board network with a tolerance of ± 3 %.

After the time required to reach normal operation has elapsed, the functions are tested and the operating data of importance for on-board use and for assessing the action of the salt mist atmosphere are recorded and noted. The sample is then disconnected for exposure to spraying.

3. Spraying phase

The sample is put into the salt mist chamber and exposed to the salt mist for two hours at a temperature of $+15\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+35\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$.

4. Humidity period

The sample is placed in the air-conditioned chamber so that the least possible amount of saline solution drips from it. It is kept in the air-conditioned chamber for seven days, at an air temperature of $+40 \pm 2\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ and a relative humidity of $93 \pm 3\%$. It must not come into contact with any other sample or metal object. Several samples may be so arranged as to preclude any mutual influence.

5. Repetition of the test cycle

The test cycle, including phases 3 and 4, is repeated three times.

6. Subsequent treatment

Following the fourth test cycle, the sample is taken out of the air-conditioned chamber and immediately washed for five minutes in running tap water and rinsed in distilled or desalinated water. Drops adhering to the sample are removed by an air jet or shaken off.

The sample is exposed to the normal ambient atmosphere for at least three hours, and in any case long enough for any visible humidity to have evaporated, before being subjected to a final inspection. The sample is dried for an hour at $+55 \pm 2\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ after rinsing.

7. Conclusions of the inspection

The external appearance of the sample is inspected visually. The nature and extent of deterioration from its initial state are recorded in the test report, with supporting photographs if necessary.

The sample is put into operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the rated voltage of the on-board network with a tolerance of $\pm 3\%$.

After the time required to reach normal operation has elapsed, the functions are tested and the operating data of importance for on-board use and for assessing the action of the salt mist atmosphere are recorded and noted.

All controls and moving parts are manipulated and checked for proper operation. The mobility of all closures, covers and moving parts intended to be detached or moved during operation or maintenance is checked.

7.3. Results to be obtained

The sample must not show any change which could:

- hinder its use and operation,
- prevent to any considerable extent the detachment of closures and covers, or the movement of moving parts in so far as this is necessary for use or maintenance,
- impair the waterproofness of the housing,
- be expected to cause malfunctions in the long run.

The operating data recorded in phases 3 and 7 must remain within the tolerances laid down in these test and approval conditions.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

PART III

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS AND TEST CONDITIONS FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT USED FOR NAVIGATION IN INLAND WATERWAY VESSELS

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL

Article 1.01

Scope

These provisions set out the minimum technical and operational requirements for radar equipment used for navigation in inland waterway vessels as well as the conditions for testing conformity with these minimum requirements. Inland ECDIS equipment that can be used in navigation mode counts as navigational radar equipment within the meaning of these provisions.

Article 1.02

Purpose of the radar equipment

The radar equipment shall facilitate the navigation of the vessel by providing an intelligible radar picture of its position in relation to buoys, shorelines and navigational structures, as well as permitting the reliable and timely recognition of other vessels and obstructions protruding above the water surface.

Article 1.03

Approval testing

Radar equipment may not be installed on board vessels until it has been established by means of a type test that the equipment meets the minimum requirements laid down in these provisions.

Article 1.04

Application for approval testing

1 Applications for a type-test of radar equipment shall be submitted to a competent testing authority in one of the Member States.

2 Each application shall be accompanied by the following documents:

3 By means of tests, the applicant shall establish or have it established that the radar equipment meets the minimum requirements of these provisions.

4 For approval testing purposes, 'applicant' means any legal or natural person under whose name, trademark or any other form of identification the equipment submitted for testing is manufactured or marketed.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 1.05

Type-approval

- 1 If the equipment passes the type test, the competent testing authority shall issue a certificate of conformity.
- 2 Each testing authority shall be entitled to select equipment from the production series at any time for inspection.
- 3 The type-approval shall be valid for a period of 10 years and may be renewed on request.

Article 1.06

Marking of the equipment and approval number

- 1 Each component of the equipment shall be marked indelibly with the name of the manufacturer, the trade designation of the equipment, the type of equipment and the serial number.
- 2 The approval number assigned by the competent authority shall be affixed indelibly to the display unit in such a way that it remains clearly visible after the equipment has been installed.
- 3 The approval number shall be used only in conjunction with the associated approval.
- 4 The competent authority shall immediately inform the Committee of the approval number assigned.

Textual Amendments

- F3** Inserted by [Council Directive 2008/59/EC of 12 June 2008 adapting Directive 2006/87/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels, by reason of the accession of the Republic of Bulgaria and Romania.](#)

Article 1.07

Manufacturer's declaration

Each unit of equipment shall be accompanied by a manufacturer's declaration to the effect that it meets the prevailing minimum requirements and that is identical in every respect to the equipment submitted for testing.

Article 1.08

Modifications to approved equipment

- 1 Any modification made to equipment already approved shall cause the type-approval to be withdrawn. Whenever modifications are planned, details shall be sent in writing to the competent testing authority.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 The competent testing authority shall decide whether the approval still applies or whether an inspection or new type-test is necessary.

CHAPTER 2

GENERAL MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT

Article 2.01

Construction, design

- 1 Radar equipment shall be suitable for operation on board inland waterway vessels.
- 2 The construction and design of the equipment shall be in accordance with the state of the art, both mechanically and electrically.
- 3 In the absence of any specific provision in Annex II to this Directive or in these provisions, the requirements and test methods contained in IEC publication 945 'Marine Navigational Equipment General Requirements' shall apply to power supply, safety, mutual interference of shipborne equipment, compass safe distance, resistance to climatic influences, mechanical strength, environmental influences, audible noise emission and equipment markings.

Article 2.02

Spurious emissions and electromagnetic compatibility

- 1 In the frequency range of 30 to 2 000 MHz, the field strength of spurious emissions shall not exceed 500 $\mu\text{V/m}$.
- 2 The equipment shall satisfy the minimum requirements at electromagnetic field strengths of up to 15 V/m in the immediate vicinity of the equipment under test in the frequency range of 30 to 2 000 MHz.

Article 2.03

Operation

- 1 The equipment shall not have more controls than are necessary for its correct operation.
- 2 All controls and indicators shall be provided with symbols and/or markings in English. Symbols shall meet the requirements of IMO Recommendation No A.278 (VIII) 'Symbols for controls on marine navigational radar equipment' or the requirements contained in IEC publication No 417; all numerals and letters shall be at least 4 mm high.
- 3 The equipment shall be designed in such a way that operating mistakes cannot cause its failure.
- 4 Any functions over and above the minimum requirements, such as facilities for connection to other equipment, shall be provided in such a way that the equipment meets the minimum requirements under all conditions.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 2.04

Operating instructions

- 1 A detailed operator's manual shall be supplied with each unit. It shall be available in Dutch, English, French and German and shall contain at least the following information:
- 2 A summarised operator's manual in a durable form shall be supplied with each unit.

Article 2.05

Installation and operating tests

Installation, replacement and operating tests shall be in accordance with the requirements of Part V.

CHAPTER 3

MINIMUM OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT

Article 3.01

Operational readiness of radar equipment

- 1 From a cold start, radar equipment shall be fully operational within four minutes. After this period, it shall be possible to interrupt and activate transmission instantaneously.
- 2 It shall be possible for a single person to operate the radar equipment and watch the display simultaneously.
- 3 It shall be possible to read the display also when there is considerable ambient brightness. When necessary, appropriate vision aids shall be available and shall be attachable and removable simply and easily.

Article 3.02

Resolution

- 1 Angular resolution
- 2 Minimum range and range resolution
- 3 Functions that can cause a deterioration of resolution shall not be switchable in range scales up to 2 000 m.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 3.03

Range scales

- 1 The radar equipment shall be provided with the following sequentially-switchable range scales and circles:
- 2 Further sequentially-switchable range scales shall be permitted.
- 3 The selected range scale, the distance between range circles and the distance of the variable range marker shall be indicated in metres or kilometres.
- 4 The width of the range circles and the variable range marker shall, at the normal brightness setting, not exceed 2 mm.
- 5 Subsector display and enlargements shall not be permitted.

Article 3.04

Variable range marker

- 1 The radar equipment shall have a variable range marker.
- 2 Within eight seconds, it shall be possible to set the range marker to any distance.
- 3 The distance at which the variable range marker is set shall not change even after switchover to other range scales.
- 4 The range shall be displayed as a three- or four-digit number.

Article 3.05

Lubber line

- 1 A lubber line shall extend from the position on the radar display that corresponds to the antenna position up to the edge of the radar screen.
- 2 The width of the lubber line at the edge of the screen shall not be more than 0,5°.
- 3 The radar unit shall have an adjusting device for correcting any azimuthal angular error in the antenna mounting.
- 4 Following correction of the angular error and activation of the radar unit, the deviation of the lubber line from the keel line shall not exceed 0,5°.

Article 3.06

Off-centring

- 1 To permit an extended forward view, off-centring of the radar picture shall be possible at all the range scales specified in Article 3.03(1).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

2 In the range with extended forward view, the range circles shall be extended and the variable range marker shall be adjustable and readable up to the maximum of the displayed range.

3 A fixed forward extension of the range displayed in accordance with paragraph 1 is permitted provided that, for the central part of the picture, the effective diameter is not less than that specified in Article 4.03(1), and that the bearing scale is designed in such a way that a bearing can be taken in accordance with Article 3.08.

Article 3.07

Bearing scale

1 The radar equipment shall have a bearing scale at the edge of the screen.

2 The bearing scale shall be divided into at least 72 parts each representing 5 degrees. The graduation marks representing 10 degrees must be clearly longer than those representing 5 degrees.

3 The bearing scale shall be marked in three-figure numbers from 000 to 360 degrees in a clockwise direction. Numbering shall be in Arabic numerals every 10 or every 30 degrees.

Article 3.08

Bearing facilities

1 Facilities for taking bearings of targets shall be allowed.

2 If such facilities are provided, they shall be capable of taking a bearing of any target within approximately 5 seconds, with a maximum error of ± 1 degree.

3 If an electronic bearing line is used, it shall:

4 If a mechanical bearing line is used, it shall:

Article 3.09

Facilities for reducing sea and rain clutter

1 The radar equipment shall have facilities with manual controls for reducing clutter from sea and rain.

2 The sea-clutter control (sensitivity time control — STC) shall, at its maximum setting, be effective up to a distance of approximately 1 200 m.

3 The radar equipment shall not be provided with automatic facilities for reducing sea and rain clutter.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 3.10

Reduction of interference from other radar equipment

- 1 There shall be a switchable facility for the reduction of interference caused by other radar equipment.
- 2 The operation of this facility shall not suppress the display of useful targets.

Article 3.11

Compatibility with radar beacons

Signals from radar beacons in accordance with IMO resolution A.423 (XI) shall be displayed clearly with the rain clutter suppression (fast time constant — FTC) switched off.

Article 3.12

Gain control

The range of the gain control shall be such that, at minimum sea-clutter suppression setting, surface movement of the water is clearly visible and that powerful radar echoes with an echo area equivalent to 10 000 m² may be cut out at any distance.

Article 3.13

Frequency tuning

The display unit shall be provided with a tuning indicator. The tuning scale shall have a length of at least 30 mm. The indicator shall function in all ranges, even without radar echoes. The indicator shall function equally well when the gain or suppression of close proximity echoes is activated.

A manual control to correct the tuning shall be available.

Article 3.14

Nautical orientation lines and information on the screen

- 1 Only the lubber line, bearing lines and range circles may be superimposed on the radar screen.
- 2 Apart from the radar picture and in addition to information on the operation of the radar equipment, only nautical information such as that listed below may be displayed:
- 3 All screen information besides the radar picture shall be displayed quasi-statically and the refreshing rate shall satisfy the operational requirements.
- 4 The requirements regarding the display and accuracy of nautical information shall be the same as those applicable to the main equipment.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 3.15

System sensitivity

The system sensitivity shall be such that a standard reflector at a distance of 1 200 m appears clearly on the radar picture on every revolution of the antenna. In the case of a 1 m² reflector at the same distance, the quotient of the number of antenna revolutions with radar echo during a specific period and the total number of antenna revolutions in that same period based on 100 revolutions (blip-scan rate) shall not be less than 0,8.

Article 3.16

Target trail

Previous positions of targets shall be shown by means of a trail.

The representation of the target trail shall be quasi-continuous and the brightness shall be less than that of the associated target; the target trail and the radar picture shall have the same colour. The persistence of the trail shall be adjustable to operational requirements, but shall not last longer than 2 antenna revolutions.

The target trail shall not impair the radar picture.

Article 3.17

Slave indicators

Slave indicators shall comply with all requirements applicable to navigational radar equipment.

CHAPTER 4

MINIMUM TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT

Article 4.01

Operation

- 1 All controls shall be so arranged that during their operation no information is concealed from view and radar navigation remains unimpaired.
- 2 Controls which can be used to switch off the equipment or, if activated, could lead to a malfunction must be protected against accidental operation.
- 3 All controls and indicators shall be provided with a dazzle-free source of lighting appropriate for all ambient lighting conditions and adjustable down to zero by means of an independent control.
- 4 The following functions must have their own controls with direct access:
 - 5 At least the controls for gain, sea clutter and rain clutter must be adjustable by means of a rotary control with an effect proportional to the angle of rotation.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

6 Adjustment of controls shall be such that movements to the right or upwards have a positive effect on the variable and movements to the left or downwards a negative effect.

7 If push-buttons are used, it shall be possible to locate and operate them by touch. They shall also have clearly perceptible contact release.

8 It must be possible to adjust the brightness of the following variables separately from zero to the value required for operational purposes:

9 Provided that the difference in brightness of some of the displayed values is only slight and the fixed range circle, the variable range circle and the bearing line can be switched off independently of each other, there may be four brightness controls, one for each of the following groups of values:

10 The brightness of the lubber line shall be adjustable but shall not be reducible to zero.

11 To switch off the lubber line, there shall be a control with automatic reset.

12 From zero, the anti-clutter devices shall be continuously adjustable.

Article 4.02

Display

1 'Radar picture' means the scaled representation of radar echoes of the surroundings and their motion relative to the vessel on the display unit's screen from one antenna revolution with the vessel's keel line and the lubber line coinciding at all times.

2 'Display unit' means that part of the equipment that contains the screen.

3 'Screen' means the low-reflection part of the display unit on which either the radar picture alone, or the radar picture together with additional nautical information, is shown.

4 'Effective diameter of the radar picture' means the diameter of the largest completely circular radar picture which can be shown within the bearing scale.

5 'Raster scan representation' means the quasi-static representation of the radar picture from a complete revolution of the antenna, in the form of a television picture.

Article 4.03

Radar picture characteristics

1 The effective diameter of the radar picture shall be not less than 270 mm.

2 The diameter of the outer range circle in the range scales specified in Article 3.03 shall be at least 90 % of the effective radar picture diameter.

3 For all range scales, the antenna position shall be visible in the radar picture.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 4.04

Colour of the display

The display colour shall be chosen on the basis of physiological factors. If various colours can be reproduced on the screen, the actual radar picture shall be monochrome. The reproduction of different colours shall not result in mixed colours, by superimposition, on any part of the screen.

Article 4.05

Picture refreshment rate and persistence

- 1 The radar picture shown by the display shall be replaced by the up-to-date radar picture within 2,5 seconds.
- 2 Each echo on the screen shall persist for at least the duration of one antenna revolution, but not longer than two antenna revolutions.
- 3 The difference in brightness between the writing of an echo and its afterglow during one antenna revolution shall be as small as possible.

Article 4.06

Display linearity

- 1 The linearity error of the radar picture shall not exceed 5 %.
- 2 In all ranges up to 2 000 m a fixed straight shore line at a distance of 30 m from the radar antenna shall be displayed as a straight continuous echo structure without observable distortions.

Article 4.07

Accuracy of range and azimuthal measurements

- 1 The determination of the distance to a target by means of variable or fixed range circles shall be accurate to ± 10 m or $\pm 1,5$ %, whichever is the larger.
- 2 The angular value of the bearing of an object shall not differ by more than 1 degree from the real value.

Article 4.08

Antenna characteristics and emission spectrum

- 1 The antenna drive system and the antenna shall be such as to allow correct operation at wind speeds of up to 100 km per hour.
- 2 The antenna drive system shall have a safety switch by means of which the transmitter and the rotator drive can be switched off.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

3 The horizontal radiation pattern of the antenna, measured in one direction, shall meet the following requirements:

4 The vertical radiation pattern of the antenna, measured in one direction, shall meet the following requirements:

5 The radiated high-frequency energy shall be horizontally polarised.

6 The operating frequency of the equipment shall be in a range above 9 GHz which is allocated under prevailing ITU Radio Regulations to navigational radar equipment.

7 The frequency spectrum of the high-frequency energy radiated by the antenna shall be in conformity with ITU Radio Regulations.

CHAPTER 5

TEST CONDITIONS AND TEST METHODS FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT

Article 5.01

Safety, load capacity and interference diffusion

Power supply, safety, mutual interference of shipborne equipment, compass safe distance, resistance to climatic influences, mechanical strength, environmental impact and audible noise emission shall be tested in accordance with IEC publication 945 'Marine Navigational Equipment General Requirements'.

Article 5.02

Spurious emissions and electromagnetic compatibility

1 Spurious emissions shall be measured in accordance with IEC publication 945 'Marine Navigational Equipment Interference' in the frequency range of 30 to 2 000 MHz.

2 The electromagnetic compatibility requirements of Article 2.02(2) shall be met.

Article 5.03

Test procedure

1 The test field shown in Appendix 2 for the testing of radar equipment shall be arranged on a calm water surface at least 1,5 km long and 0,3 km wide, or on terrain with equivalent reflection properties.

2 A standard reflector shall be a radar reflector which, at a wavelength of 3,2 cm, has an equivalent radar cross-section of 10 m².

3 Standard reflectors shall be set up at distances of 15 m, 30 m, 45 m, 60 m, 85 m, 300 m, 800 m, 1 170 m, 1 185 m and 1 200 m from the antenna position.

4 The radar equipment shall be adjusted to the best quality of picture. The gain must be adjusted in such a way that, in the area immediately beyond the range of operation of the anti-clutter control, noise can no longer be seen.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

5 The antenna shall be set up at any desired height between 5 and 10 m above the surface of the water or the ground. The reflectors shall be set up at such a height above the surface of the water or of the ground that their effective radar return corresponds to the value specified in paragraph 2.

6 All reflectors set up within the selected range shall, at all distances up to and including 1 200 m, be shown on the screen simultaneously as clearly separated targets, regardless of the azimuthal position of the test field in relation to the lubber line.

Article 5.04

Antenna measurements

The antenna characteristics shall be measured in accordance with IEC publication 936 'Shipborne Radar'.

Appendix Angular resolution in ranges up to and including 1 200 m

1

Appendix Test field for determination of the resolution of radar equipment

2

PART IV

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS AND TEST CONDITIONS FOR RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS USED IN INLAND WATERWAY VESSELS

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL

Article 1.01

Scope

These provisions set out the minimum technical and operational requirements for rate-of-turn indicators used in inland waterway vessels, as well as the conditions for testing conformity with these minimum requirements.

Article 1.02

Purpose of the rate-of-turn indicator

The rate-of-turn indicator is intended to facilitate radar navigation, and to measure and indicate the rate of turn of the vessel to port or starboard.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 1.03

Approval testing

Rate-of-turn indicators may not be installed on board vessels until it has been established by means of a type test that they meet the minimum requirements laid down in these provisions.

Article 1.04

Application for approval testing

- 1 Applications for a type-test of rate-of-turn indicators shall be submitted to a competent testing authority in one of the Member States.
- 2 Each application shall be accompanied by the following documents:
- 3 By means of tests, the applicant shall establish or have it established that the radar equipment meets the minimum requirements of these provisions.
- 4 For approval testing purposes, ‘applicant’ means any legal or natural person under whose name, trademark or any other form of identification the equipment submitted for testing is manufactured or marketed.

Article 1.05

Type-approval

- 1 If the equipment passes the type test, the competent testing authority shall issue a certificate of conformity.
- 2 Each testing authority shall be entitled to select equipment from the production series at any time for inspection.
- 3 The type-approval shall be valid for a period of 10 years and may be renewed on request.

Article 1.06

Marking of the equipment and approval number

- 1 Each component of the equipment shall be marked indelibly with the name of the manufacturer, the trade designation of the equipment, the type of equipment and the serial number.
- 2 The approval number assigned by the competent authority shall be affixed indelibly to the control unit in such a way that it remains clearly visible after the equipment has been installed.
- 3 The approval number shall be used only in conjunction with the associated approval.
- 4 The competent authority shall immediately inform the Committee of the approval number assigned.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Textual Amendments

- F3** Inserted by [Council Directive 2008/59/EC](#) of 12 June 2008 adapting [Directive 2006/87/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council laying down technical requirements for inland waterway vessels, by reason of the accession of the Republic of Bulgaria and Romania.

Article 1.07

Manufacturer's declaration

Each unit of equipment shall be accompanied by a manufacturer's declaration to the effect that it meets the prevailing minimum requirements and that is identical in every respect to the equipment submitted for testing.

Article 1.08

Modifications to approved equipment

- 1 Any modification made to equipment already approved shall cause the type-approval to be withdrawn.
- 2 The competent testing authority shall decide whether the approval still applies or whether an inspection or new type-test is necessary. If a new approval is granted, a new approval number shall be assigned.

CHAPTER 2

GENERAL MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS

Article 2.01

Construction, design

- 1 Rate-of-turn indicators shall be suitable for operation on board inland waterway vessels.
- 2 The construction and design of the equipment shall be in accordance with the state of the art, both mechanically and electrically.
- 3 In the absence of any specific provision in Annex II to this Directive or in these provisions, the requirements and test methods contained in IEC publication 945 'Marine Navigational Equipment General Requirements' shall apply to power supply, safety, mutual interference of shipborne equipment, compass safe distance, resistance to climatic influences, mechanical strength, environmental influences, audible noise emission and equipment markings.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 2.02

Spurious emissions and electromagnetic compatibility

1 In the frequency range of 30 to 2000 MHz, the field strength of spurious emissions shall not exceed 500 $\mu\text{V/m}$.

2 The equipment shall satisfy the minimum requirements at electromagnetic field strengths of up to 15 V/m in the immediate vicinity of the equipment under test in the frequency range of 30 to 2 000 MHz.

Article 2.03

Operation

1 The equipment shall not have more controls than are necessary for its correct operation.

2 All controls and indicators shall be provided with symbols and/or markings in English. Symbols shall meet the requirements contained in IEC publication No 417.

3 The equipment shall be designed in such a way that operating mistakes cannot cause its failure.

4 Any functions over and above the minimum requirements, such as facilities for connection to other equipment, shall be provided in such a way that the equipment meets the minimum requirements under all conditions.

Article 2.04

Operating instructions

A detailed operator's manual shall be supplied with each unit. It shall be available in Dutch, English, French and German and shall contain at least the following information:

- (a) activation and operation;
- (b) maintenance and servicing;
- (c) general safety instructions.

Article 2.05

Installation and operating tests

1 Installation, replacement and operating tests shall be in accordance with the requirements of Part V.

2 The direction of installation in relation to the keel line shall be indicated on the rate-of-turn indicator's sensor unit. Installation instructions to ensure maximum insensitivity to other normal movements of the vessel shall be provided.

CHAPTER 3

MINIMUM OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS

Article 3.01

Operational readiness of the rate-of-turn indicator

- 1 From a cold start, the rate-of-turn indicator shall be fully operational within four minutes and shall operate to within the required accuracy tolerances.
- 2 A warning signal shall indicate that the indicator is switched on. It shall be possible to observe and operate the rate-of-turn indicator simultaneously.
- 3 Cordless remote controls shall not be permitted.

Article 3.02

Indication of the rate of turn

- 1 The rate of turn shall be indicated on a linear graduated scale having the zero point situated in the middle. It shall be possible to read the direction and extent of the rate of turn with the necessary accuracy. Needle indicators and bar-graphs shall be permitted.
- 2 The indicator scale shall be at least 20 cm long and may be circular or rectilinear.
- 3 Solely digital indicators shall not be permitted.

Article 3.03

Measuring ranges

Rate-of-turn indicators may be provided with one or more measuring ranges. The following measuring ranges are recommended:

- 30°/minute
- 60°/minute
- 90°/minute
- 180°/minute
- 300°/minute.

Article 3.04

Accuracy of the indicated rate of turn

The indicated rate of turn shall not differ by more than 2 % from the measurable maximum value or by more than 10 % from the actual value, whichever is the greater (see Appendix).

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 3.05

Sensitivity

The operating threshold shall be less than or equal to a change in angular speed equivalent to 1 % of the indicated value.

Article 3.06

Monitoring of operation

1 If the rate-of-turn indicator does not operate within the required accuracy range, this shall be indicated.

2 If a gyroscope is used, any critical fall in the rate of rotation of the gyroscope shall be signalled by an indicator. A critical fall in the rate of rotation of the gyroscope is one which lowers accuracy by 10 %.

Article 3.07

Insensitivity to other normal movements of the vessel

1 Rolling of the vessel of up to 10° at a rate of turn of up to 4° per second shall not give rise to measurement errors in excess of the stipulated tolerances.

2 Impacts such as those that may occur during berthing shall not give rise to measurement errors in excess of the stipulated tolerances.

Article 3.08

Insensitivity to magnetic fields

The rate-of-turn indicator shall be insensitive to magnetic fields which typically occur on board the vessel.

Article 3.09

Slave indicators

Slave indicators shall comply with all requirements applicable to rate-of-turn indicators.

CHAPTER 4

MINIMUM TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS

Article 4.01

Operation

- 1 All controls shall be so arranged that during their operation no information is concealed from view and radar navigation remains unimpaired.
- 2 All controls and indicators shall be provided with a dazzle-free source of lighting appropriate for all ambient lighting conditions and adjustable down to zero by means of an independent control.
- 3 Adjustment of controls shall be such that movements to the right or upwards have a positive effect on the variable and movements to the left or downwards a negative effect.
- 4 If push-buttons are used, it shall be possible to locate and operate them by touch. They shall also have clearly perceptible contact release.

Article 4.02

Damping devices

- 1 The sensor system shall be damped for critical values. The damping constant (63 % of the limit value) shall not exceed 0,4 seconds.
- 2 The indicator shall be damped for critical values.

Article 4.03

Connection of additional equipment

- 1 If the rate-of-turn indicator can be connected to slave indicators or similar equipment, the rate-of-turn indication shall remain usable as an electric signal.
- 2 An external alarm switch shall be provided. The switch shall be installed as a galvanic insulation break-switch for the indicator.

CHAPTER 5

TEST CONDITIONS AND PROCEDURES FOR RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS

Article 5.01

Safety, load capacity and interference diffusion

Power supply, safety, mutual interference of shipborne equipment, compass safe distance, resistance to climatic influences, mechanical strength, environmental impact and audible

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

noise emission shall be tested in accordance with IEC publication 945 ‘Marine Navigational Equipment General Requirements’.

Article 5.02

Spurious emissions and electromagnetic compatibility

- 1 Spurious emissions shall be measured in accordance with IEC publication 945 ‘Marine Navigational Equipment Interference’ in the frequency range of 30 to 2 000 MHz.
- 2 The electromagnetic compatibility requirements of Article 2.02(2) shall be met.

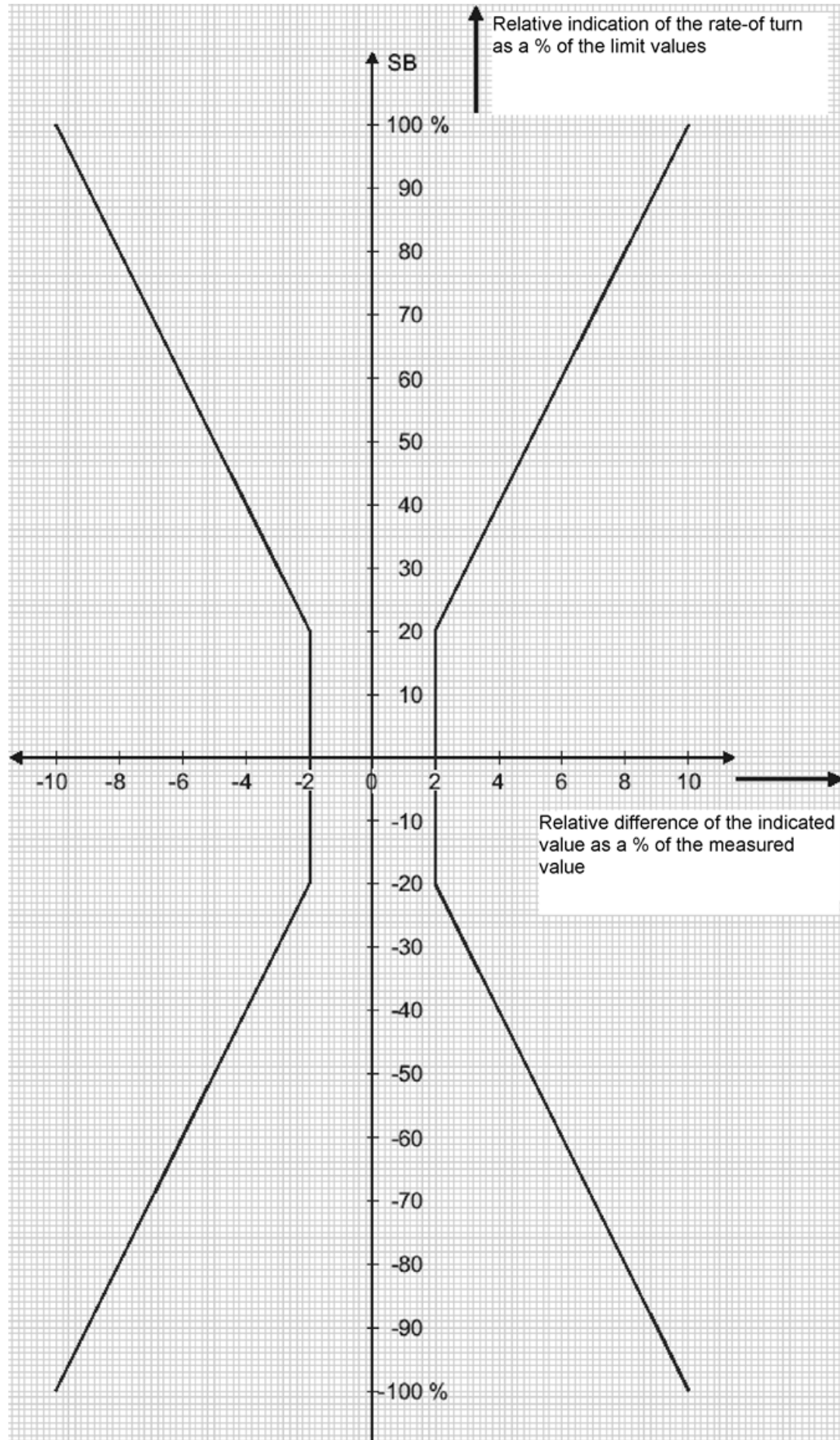
Article 5.03

Test procedure

- 1 Rate-of-turn indicators shall be brought into operation and tested under nominal and boundary conditions. In this regard, the influence of the operating voltage and of the ambient temperature shall be tested as far as the prescribed limit value.
- 2 Under the conditions described in paragraph 1, indicator errors shall remain within the tolerances indicated in the Appendix.

Appendix Maximum tolerances for indication errors of rate-of-turn indicators

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.



Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

PART V

REQUIREMENTS FOR INSTALLATION AND PERFORMANCE TESTS FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT AND RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS USED IN INLAND WATERWAY VESSELS

Article 1

Scope

The purpose of these requirements is to ensure that in the interest of safety and orderly radar navigation on inland waterways in the Community, navigational radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicators are installed according to optimum technical and ergonomic standards and that installation is followed by a performance test. Inland ECDIS equipment that can be used in navigation mode counts as navigational radar equipment within the meaning of these provisions.

Article 2

Approval of equipment

For radar navigation on inland waterways in the Community, only equipment approved according to the applicable provisions of this Directive or of the Central Commission for Navigation on the Rhine and bearing an approval number shall be authorised for installation.

Article 3

Approved specialised firms

1 The installation, replacement, repair or maintenance of radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicators shall be carried out only by specialised firms approved by the competent authority in accordance with Article 1.

2 Approval may be granted by the competent authority for a limited period and may be withdrawn by the competent authority at any time if the conditions in Article 1 are no longer met.

3 The competent authority shall immediately notify the Committee of the specialised firms which it has approved.

Article 4

Requirements for on-board power supply

All power supply leads for radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicators shall have their own separate safety devices and if possible be fail-safe.

Article 5

Installation of the radar antenna

1 The radar antenna shall be installed as close as possible to the fore-and-aft-line. There shall be no obstruction in the vicinity of the antenna causing false echoes or unwanted shadows;

if necessary, the antenna shall be mounted on the forecastle. The mounting and attachment of the radar antenna in its operational position shall be sufficiently stable to enable the radar equipment to perform within the required accuracy limits.

2 After the angular error in the mounting has been corrected and the equipment has been switched on, the difference between lubber line and fore-and-aft-line shall not be greater than 1 degree.

Article 6

Installation of the display unit and the control unit

1 The display unit and control unit shall be installed in the wheelhouse in such a way that the evaluation of the radar picture and the operation of the equipment present no difficulty. The azimuthal orientation of the radar picture shall be in accordance with the normal situation of the surroundings. Clamps and adjustable consoles are to be constructed in such a way that they can be locked in any position free of vibration.

2 During radar navigation, artificial lighting shall not be reflected in the direction of the radar operator.

3 When the control unit is not part of the display unit, it shall be located in a housing within 1 metre of the display unit. Cordless remote controls shall not be permitted.

4 If slave indicators are installed, they shall satisfy the requirements which apply to navigational radar equipment.

Article 7

Installation of the rate-of-turn indicator

1 The sensor system shall be installed as far as possible amidships, horizontal and aligned with the ship's fore-and-aft-line. The installation site shall as far as possible be free of vibration and be liable to modest temperature variations. The indicator unit shall if possible be installed above the radar display.

2 If slave indicators are installed, they shall satisfy the requirements which apply to rate-of-turn indicators.

Article 8

Installation of the position sensor

The position sensor (e.g. DGPS antenna) must be installed in such a way as to ensure that it operates with the greatest possible degree of accuracy and is not adversely affected by superstructures and transmitting equipment on board ship.

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

Article 9

Installation and performance test

Before the equipment is switched on for the first time after installation or after renewals or extensions of the ship's survey certificate (except according to Article 2.09(2) of Annex II) as well as after each modification of the vessel likely to affect the operating conditions of the equipment, an installation and performance test shall be carried out by the competent authority or by a firm authorised in accordance with Article 3. For this purpose, the following conditions shall be fulfilled:

- (a) the power supply shall have a separate safety device;
- (b) the operating voltage shall be within the tolerance (Article 2.01 of Part III);
- (c) the cabling and its installation shall satisfy the provisions of Annex II and, if necessary, the ADNR;
- (d) the number of antenna revolutions shall reach at least 24 per minute;
- (e) there shall be no obstruction in the vicinity of the antenna which impairs navigation;
- (f) the safety switch of the antenna shall be in good working order;
- (g) the arrangement of display units, rate-of-turn indicators and control units shall be ergonomic and user-friendly;
- (h) the lubber line of the radar equipment shall not deviate from the ship's fore-and-aft-line by more than 1 degree;
- (i) the accuracy of the range and azimuthal displays shall satisfy the requirements (measurements using known targets);
- (k) linearity in short ranges shall be correct (pushing and pulling);
- (l) the displayed minimum range shall be 15 metres or less;
- (m) the centre of the picture shall be visible and its diameter shall not exceed 1 mm;
- (n) False echoes caused by reflections and unwanted shadows on the lubber line shall not occur or shall not impair the safety of navigation;
- (o) Sea-clutter and rain-clutter suppressors (STC and FTC preset) and the associated controls shall perform correctly;
- (p) the gain adjustment shall be in proper working order;
- (q) focus and picture definition shall be correct;
- (r) the ship's turning direction shall be as indicated on the rate-of-turn indicator and the zero position at dead ahead shall be correct;
- (s) the radar equipment shall not be sensitive to transmissions by the ship's radio equipment or to interference from other on-board sources;
- (t) the radar equipment and/or rate-of-turn indicator shall not interfere with other on-board equipment.

Furthermore, in the case of inland ECDIS equipment:

- (u) the statistical positional error affecting the chart shall not exceed 2 m;
- (v) the statistical phase angle error affecting the chart shall not exceed 1 degree.

Article 10

Installation and performance certificate

After successful completion of a test in accordance with Article 8, the competent authority or the approved firm shall issue a certificate based on the model in the Appendix. This certificate shall be kept permanently on board.

If the test conditions have not been met, a list of defects shall be drawn up. Any existing certificate shall be withdrawn or sent to the competent authority by the approved firm.

Appendix

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

MODEL INSTALLATION AND PERFORMANCE CERTIFICATE FOR RADAR EQUIPMENT AND RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS

Type/Name of vessel:

Official registration number of vessel:

Vessel's owner

Name:

Address:

Telephone:

Radar appliances Number

Order No	Designation	Type	Approval No	Serial No

Rate-of-turn indicators Number

Order No	Designation	Type	Approval No	Serial No

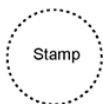
This is to certify that the radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicator of the abovementioned vessel comply with the installation and performance test requirements for radar equipment and rate-of-turn indicators used in inland waterway vessels..

Approved firm

Name:

Address:

Telephone:



Place Date

Firma:

Autoridad competente

Name:

Address:

Telephone:

PART VI

MODEL LIST OF TEST INSTITUTES, APPROVED EQUIPMENT AND APPROVED INSTALLATION FIRMS

as provided for in Part IV and Part V

A. COMPETENT TESTING AUTHORITIES
pursuant to Article 1.04(1) of Part I

B. APPROVED RADAR EQUIPMENT
pursuant to Article 1.06(4) of Part IV

No	Type	Manufacturer	Owner	Date and country of approval	Approval No	Doc. No.

C. APPROVED RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS
pursuant to Article 1.06(4) of Part IV

No	Type	Manufacturer	Owner	Date and country of approval	Approval No	Doc. No.

D. APPROVED SPECIALISED FIRMS FOR THE INSTALLATION OR REPLACEMENT OF RADAR EQUIPMENT AND RATE-OF-TURN INDICATORS
pursuant to Article 3 of Part V

Status: EU Directives are being published on this site to aid cross referencing from UK legislation. After IP completion day (31 December 2020 11pm) no further amendments will be applied to this version.

- (1) [OJ C 157, 25.5.1998, p. 17.](#)
- (2) Opinion of the European Parliament of 16 September 1999 ([OJ C 54, 25.2.2000, p. 79](#)), Council Common Position of 23 February 2006 ([OJ C 166 E, 18.7.2006, p. 1](#)), Position of the European Parliament of 5 July 2006 (not yet published in the Official Journal) and Council Decision of 23 October 2006.
- (3) [OJ L 301, 28.10.1982, p. 1.](#) Directive as last amended by the 2003 Act of Accession.
- (4) [OJ L 184, 17.7.1999, p. 23.](#) Decision as amended by Decision 2006/512/EC ([OJ L 200, 22.7.2006, p. 11](#)).
- (5) [OJ L 21, 29.1.1976, p. 10.](#) Directive as last amended by Directive 78/1016/EEC ([OJ L 349, 13.12.1978, p. 31](#)).
- (6) [OJ L 164, 30.6.1994, p. 15.](#) Directive as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 1882/2003 ([OJ L 284, 31.10.2003, p. 1](#)).
- (7) [OJ C 321, 31.12.2003, p. 1.](#)
- (8) [OJ L 144, 15.5.1998, p. 1.](#) Directive as last amended by Commission Directive 2003/75/EC ([OJ L 190, 30.7.2003, p. 6](#)).
- (9) [OJ L 373, 31.12.1991, p. 29.](#) Directive as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 1882/2003.
- (10) [OJ L 207, 23.7.1998, p. 1.](#) Directive as amended by Directive 98/79/EC ([OJ L 331, 7.12.1998, p. 1](#)).
- (11) [OJ L 164, 30.6.1994, p. 15.](#) Directive as last amended by Regulation (EC) No 1882/2003.
- (12) The hold sections providing free surfaces that are exposed to water arise from the longitudinal and/or transverse water-tight compartmentalisation that forms independent sections.
- (13) [OJ L 319, 12.12.1994, p. 20.](#) Directive as last amended by Directive 2002/84/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council ([OJ L 324, 29.11.2002, p. 53](#)).
- (14) The rated voltage and frequency are those indicated by the manufacturer. Ranges of voltage and/or frequency may also be indicated.
- (15) Fundamental values of the E-12 IEC series: 1,0; 1,2; 1,5; 1,8; 2,2; 2,7; 3,3; 3,9; 4,7; 5,6; 6,8; 8,2.